

# The Theoretical Minimum

## Quantum Mechanics - Solutions

Last version: [tales.mbivert.com/on-the-theoretical-minimum-solutions/](https://tales.mbivert.com/on-the-theoretical-minimum-solutions/) or [github.com/mbivert/ttm](https://github.com/mbivert/ttm)

M. Bivert

June 21, 2023

### Abstract

Below are solution proposals to the exercises of *The Theoretical Minimum - Quantum Mechanics*, written by Leonard Susskind and Art Friedman. An effort has been so as to recall from the book all the referenced equations, and to be rather verbose regarding mathematical details, rather in line with the general tone of the series.

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Systems and Experiments</b>	<b>2</b>
1.1	Inner Products . . . . .	2
<b>2</b>	<b>Quantum States</b>	<b>4</b>
2.1	Along the $x$ Axis . . . . .	4
2.2	Along the $y$ Axis . . . . .	5
<b>3</b>	<b>Principles of Quantum Mechanics</b>	<b>11</b>
3.1	Mathematical Interlude: Linear Operators . . . . .	11
3.1.1	Hermitian Operators and Orthonormal Bases . . . . .	11
3.1.2	The Gram-Schmidt Procedure . . . . .	17
3.2	The Principles . . . . .	17
3.3	An Example: Spin Operators . . . . .	17
3.4	Constructing Spin Operators . . . . .	17
3.5	A Common Misconception . . . . .	18
3.6	3-Vector Operators Revisited . . . . .	18
3.7	Reaping the Results . . . . .	18
3.8	The Spin-Polarization Principle . . . . .	26
<b>4</b>	<b>Time and Change</b>	<b>26</b>
4.1	A Classical Reminder . . . . .	26
4.2	Unitarity . . . . .	26
4.3	Determinism in Quantum Mechanics . . . . .	26
4.4	A Closer Look at $U(t)$ . . . . .	26
4.5	The Hamiltonian . . . . .	27
4.6	What Ever Happened to $\hbar$ ? . . . .	27
4.7	Expectation Values . . . . .	27
4.8	Ignoring the Phase-Factor . . . . .	27
4.9	Connections to Classical Mechanics . . . . .	27
4.10	Conservation of Energy . . . . .	28
4.11	Spin in a Magnetic Field . . . . .	28
4.12	Solving the Schrödinger Equation . . . . .	29
4.13	Recipe for a Schrödinger Ket . . . . .	29
4.14	Collapse . . . . .	32

<b>5</b>	<b>Uncertainty and Time Dependence</b>	<b>32</b>
5.1	Mathematical Interlude: Complete Sets of Commuting Variables . . . . .	32
5.1.1	States That Depend On More Than One Measurable . . . . .	32
5.1.2	Wave Functions . . . . .	32
5.1.3	A Note About Terminology . . . . .	32
5.2	Measurement . . . . .	32
5.3	The Uncertainty Principle . . . . .	33
5.4	The Meaning of Uncertainty . . . . .	33
5.5	Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality . . . . .	33
5.6	The Triangle Inequality and the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality . . . . .	33
5.7	The General Uncertainty Principle . . . . .	33
<b>6</b>	<b>Combining Systems: Entanglement</b>	<b>35</b>
6.1	Mathematical Interlude: Tensor Products . . . . .	35
6.1.1	Meet Alice and Bob . . . . .	35
6.1.2	Representing the Combined System . . . . .	35
6.2	Classical Correlation . . . . .	35
6.3	Combining Quantum Systems . . . . .	35
6.4	Two Spins . . . . .	35
6.5	Product States . . . . .	35
6.6	Counting Parameters for the Product State . . . . .	37
6.7	Entangled States . . . . .	37
6.8	Alice and Bob's Observables . . . . .	37
6.9	Composite Observables . . . . .	42
<b>7</b>	<b>More on Entanglement</b>	<b>52</b>
7.1	Mathematical Interlude: Tensor Products in Component Form . . . . .	52
7.1.1	Building Tensor Product Matrices from Basic Principles . . . . .	52
7.1.2	Building Tensor Product Matrices from Component Matrices . . . . .	52
7.2	Mathematical Interlude: Outer Products . . . . .	56
7.3	Density Matrices: A New Tool . . . . .	56
7.4	Entanglement and Density Matrices . . . . .	56
7.5	Entanglement for Two Spins . . . . .	56
7.6	A Concrete Example: Calculating Alice's Density Matrix . . . . .	59
7.7	Tests for Entanglement . . . . .	62
7.7.1	The Correlation Test for Entanglement . . . . .	62
7.7.2	The Density Matrix Test for Entanglement . . . . .	64
7.8	The Process of Measurement . . . . .	64
7.9	Entanglement and Locality . . . . .	66
7.10	The Quantum Sim: An Introduction to Bell's Theorem . . . . .	66
7.11	Entanglement Summary . . . . .	66
<b>8</b>	<b>Particles and Waves</b>	<b>81</b>

# 1 Systems and Experiments

## 1.1 Inner Products

**Exercise 1.** a) Using the axioms for inner products, prove

$$\left( \langle A| + \langle B| \right) |C\rangle = \langle A|C\rangle + \langle B|C\rangle$$

b) Prove  $\langle A|A\rangle$  is a real number.

---

a) Let us recall the two axioms in question:

**Axiom 1.**

$$\langle C | (|A\rangle + |B\rangle) = \langle C | A \rangle + \langle C | B \rangle$$

**Axiom 2.**

$$\langle B | A \rangle = \langle A | B \rangle^*$$

Where  $z^*$  is the complex conjugate of  $z \in \mathbb{C}$

Let us recall also that if

- $\langle A |$  is the bra of  $|A\rangle$
- $\langle B |$  is the bra of  $|B\rangle$

Then  $\langle A | + \langle B |$  is the bra of  $|A\rangle + |B\rangle$ .

Let us also observe that for  $(a, b) = (x_a + iy_a, x_b + iy_b) \in \mathbb{C}^2$ :

$$\begin{aligned} (a + b)^* &= (x_a + iy_a + x_b + iy_b)^* \\ &= x_a - iy_a + x_b - iy_b \\ &= a^* + b^* \end{aligned}$$

We thus have:

$$\begin{aligned} (\langle A | + \langle B |) | C \rangle &= \langle C | (|A\rangle + |B\rangle)^* \\ &= (\langle C | A \rangle + \langle C | B \rangle)^* \\ &= \langle C | A \rangle^* + \langle C | B \rangle^* \\ &= \langle A | C \rangle + \langle B | C \rangle \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

b) Mainly from the second axiom:

$$\begin{aligned} x + iy &= \langle A | A \rangle \\ &= \langle A | A \rangle^* \\ &= x - iy \\ &\Rightarrow 2iy = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow y = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \langle A | A \rangle = x \in \mathbb{R} \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

**Exercise 2.** Show that the inner product defined by Eq. 1.2 satisfies all the axioms of inner products.

Let us recall the two axioms in question:

**Axiom 3.**

$$\langle C | (|A\rangle + |B\rangle) = \langle C | A \rangle + \langle C | B \rangle$$

**Axiom 4.**

$$\langle B | A \rangle = \langle A | B \rangle^*$$

Where  $z^*$  is the complex conjugate of  $z \in \mathbb{C}$

And let us recall Eq. 1.2 of the book:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle B | A \rangle &= (\beta_1^* \quad \beta_2^* \quad \beta_3^* \quad \beta_4^* \quad \beta_5^*) \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_3 \\ \alpha_4 \\ \alpha_5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \beta_1^* \alpha_1 + \beta_2^* \alpha_2 + \beta_3^* \alpha_3 + \beta_4^* \alpha_4 + \beta_5^* \alpha_5 \end{aligned}$$

For the first axiom, considering  $\langle C| = (\gamma_i^*)$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle C|(|A\rangle + |B\rangle) &= (\gamma_1^* \quad \gamma_2^* \quad \gamma_3^* \quad \gamma_4^* \quad \gamma_5^*) \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 + \beta_1 \\ \alpha_2 + \beta_2 \\ \alpha_3 + \beta_3 \\ \alpha_4 + \beta_4 \\ \alpha_5 + \beta_5 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \gamma_1^*(\alpha_1 + \beta_1) + \gamma_2^*(\alpha_2 + \beta_2) + \gamma_3^*(\alpha_3 + \beta_3) + \gamma_4^*(\alpha_4 + \beta_4) + \gamma_5^*(\alpha_5 + \beta_5) \\
&= (\gamma_1^*\alpha_1 + \gamma_2^*\alpha_2 + \gamma_3^*\alpha_3 + \gamma_4^*\alpha_4 + \gamma_5^*\alpha_5) + (\gamma_1^*\beta_1 + \gamma_2^*\beta_2 + \gamma_3^*\beta_3 + \gamma_4^*\beta_4 + \gamma_5^*\beta_5) \\
&= (\gamma_1^* \quad \gamma_2^* \quad \gamma_3^* \quad \gamma_4^* \quad \gamma_5^*) \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_3 \\ \alpha_4 \\ \alpha_5 \end{pmatrix} + (\gamma_1^* \quad \gamma_2^* \quad \gamma_3^* \quad \gamma_4^* \quad \gamma_5^*) \begin{pmatrix} \beta_1 \\ \beta_2 \\ \beta_3 \\ \beta_4 \\ \beta_5 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \langle C|A\rangle + \langle C|B\rangle \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Before diving into the second axiom, let us observe that for  $(a, b) = (x_a + iy_a, x_b + iy_b) \in \mathbb{C}^2$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
(ab)^* &= \left( (x_a + iy_a) \times (x_b + iy_b) \right)^* \\
&= \left( x_a x_b - y_a y_b + i(x_b y_a + x_a y_b) \right)^* \\
&= x_a x_b - y_a y_b - i(x_b y_a + x_a y_b) \\
&= (x_a - iy_a) \times (x_b - iy_b) \\
&= a^* b^*
\end{aligned}$$

Or, perhaps more simply using complex numbers' exponential's form:

$$\begin{aligned}
(ab)^* &= \left( r_a r_b e^{i(\theta_a + \theta_b)} \right)^* \\
&= r_a r_b e^{-i(\theta_a + \theta_b)} \\
&= a^* b^*
\end{aligned}$$

Hence, regarding the second axiom:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle B|A\rangle &= \left( (\langle B|A\rangle)^* \right)^* \\
&= \left( (\beta_1^* \alpha_1 + \beta_2^* \alpha_2 + \beta_3^* \alpha_3 + \beta_4^* \alpha_4 + \beta_5^* \alpha_5)^* \right)^* \\
&= (\beta_1 \alpha_1^* + \beta_2 \alpha_2^* + \beta_3 \alpha_3^* + \beta_4 \alpha_4^* + \beta_5 \alpha_5^*)^* \\
&= (\alpha_1^* \beta_1 + \alpha_2^* \beta_2 + \alpha_3^* \beta_3 + \alpha_4^* \beta_4 + \alpha_5^* \beta_5)^* \\
&= \left( (\alpha_1^* \quad \alpha_2^* \quad \alpha_3^* \quad \alpha_4^* \quad \alpha_5^*) \begin{pmatrix} \beta_1 \\ \beta_2 \\ \beta_3 \\ \beta_4 \\ \beta_5 \end{pmatrix} \right)^* \\
&= \langle A|B\rangle^* \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

## 2 Quantum States

### 2.1 Along the $x$ Axis

**Exercise 3.** Prove that the vector  $|r\rangle$  in Eq. 2.5 is orthogonal to vector  $|l\rangle$  in Eq. 2.6.

---

Let us recall respectively Eq. 2.5 and Eq. 2.6:

$$|r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \qquad |l\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle$$

Orthogonality can be detected with the inner-product:  $|l\rangle$  and  $|r\rangle$  are orthogonal  $\Leftrightarrow \langle r|l\rangle = \langle l|r\rangle = 0$ .

**Remark 1.**

*The nullity of either inner-product is sufficient, because of the  $\langle A|B\rangle = \langle B|A\rangle^*$  axiom.*

For instance:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle l|r\rangle &= (\lambda_u^* \quad \lambda_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} \rho_u \\ \rho_d \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \quad -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ &= 0 \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Or, similarly:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle r|l\rangle &= (\rho_u^* \quad \rho_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_u \\ \lambda_d \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \quad \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ &= 0 \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

## 2.2 Along the $y$ Axis

**Exercise 4.** *Prove that  $|i\rangle$  and  $|o\rangle$  satisfy all of the conditions in Eqs. 2.7, 2.8 and 2.9. Are they unique in that respect?*

---

Let us recall, in order, Eqs. 2.7, 2.8, 2.9, 2.10, which defines  $|i\rangle$  and  $|o\rangle$ , and both 2.5 and 2.6 which defines  $|r\rangle$  and  $|l\rangle$ :

$$\langle i|o\rangle = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \langle o|u\rangle \langle u|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} & \langle o|d\rangle \langle d|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \\ \langle i|u\rangle \langle u|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} & \langle i|d\rangle \langle d|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \\ \langle o|r\rangle \langle r|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} & \langle o|l\rangle \langle l|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \\ \langle i|r\rangle \langle r|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} & \langle i|l\rangle \langle l|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$|i\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \qquad |o\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle - \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle$$

$$|r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \qquad |l\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle$$

For clarity, let us recall that  $\langle u|A\rangle$  is the component of  $|A\rangle$  on the orthonormal vector  $|u\rangle$ . This is because in a  $(|i\rangle)_{i \in F}$  *orthonormal* basis we have:

$$\begin{aligned} |A\rangle &= \sum_{i \in F} \alpha_i |i\rangle \\ \Rightarrow \langle j|A\rangle &= \langle j| \sum_{i \in F} \alpha_i |i\rangle = \sum_{i \in F} \alpha_i \langle j|i\rangle = \alpha_j \end{aligned}$$

And to make better sense of those equations, let us recall that  $\alpha_u^* \alpha_u = \langle A|u\rangle \langle u|A\rangle$  is the probability of a state vector  $|A\rangle = \alpha_u|u\rangle + \alpha_d|d\rangle$  to be measured in the state  $|u\rangle$ .

For Eq. 2.7, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \langle i|o\rangle &= (\iota_u^* \quad \iota_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} o_u \\ o_d \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \iota_u^* o_u + \iota_d^* o_d \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} = 0 \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

For Eqs. 2.8, we can rely on the projection on an orthonormal vector:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle o|u\rangle \langle u|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \square & \langle o|d\rangle \langle d|o\rangle &= \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \square \\ \langle i|u\rangle \langle u|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \square & \langle i|d\rangle \langle d|i\rangle &= \frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

For Eqs. 2.9, we need to rely on the column form of the inner-product:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle o|r\rangle\langle r|o\rangle &= (o_u^* \ o_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} \rho_u \\ \rho_d \end{pmatrix} (\rho_u^* \ \rho_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} o_u \\ o_d \end{pmatrix} & \langle o|l\rangle\langle l|o\rangle &= (o_u^* \ o_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_u \\ \lambda_d \end{pmatrix} (\lambda_u^* \ \lambda_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} o_u \\ o_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}}\right) & &= \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{i}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i}{2}\right) & &= \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{i}{2}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}(1+i)(1-i) & &= \frac{1}{4}(1-i)(1+i) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}(1+i-i+1) = \frac{1}{2} \quad \square & &= \frac{1}{4}(1-i+i+1) = \frac{1}{2} \quad \square \\
\langle i|r\rangle\langle r|i\rangle &= (\iota_u^* \ \iota_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} \rho_u \\ \rho_d \end{pmatrix} (\rho_u^* \ \rho_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} \iota_u \\ \iota_d \end{pmatrix} & \langle i|l\rangle\langle l|i\rangle &= (\iota_u^* \ \iota_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_u \\ \lambda_d \end{pmatrix} (\lambda_u^* \ \lambda_d^*) \begin{pmatrix} \iota_u \\ \iota_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}\right) & &= \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{i}{2}\right) & &= \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{i}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i}{2}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}(1-i)(1+i) & &= \frac{1}{4}(1+i)(1-i) \\
&= \frac{1}{4}(1+i-i+1) = \frac{1}{2} \quad \square & &= \frac{1}{4}(1+i-i+1) = \frac{1}{2} \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

---

Regarding the unicity of  $|i\rangle, |o\rangle$ , as for  $|r\rangle, |l\rangle$ , there definitely is a phase ambiguity, meaning, we can multiply either  $|i\rangle$  or  $|o\rangle$  by a *phase factor*, say  $e^{i\theta}$ , without disturbing any of the constraints: orthogonality, probabilities, and the resulting vectors are still unitary.

But as stated by the authors for  $|r\rangle, |l\rangle$ , measurable quantities are independant of any phase factors. So up to it, they seem to be unique so far.

However, let's try to change the  $i$ 's place for instance in  $|i\rangle$ :

$$|i\rangle = \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle$$

The vector is still unitary, we still have orthogonality with  $|o\rangle$ , and if you try to compute  $\langle i|u\rangle\langle u|i\rangle$ ,  $\langle i|d\rangle\langle d|i\rangle$ ,  $\langle i|r\rangle\langle r|i\rangle$  or  $\langle i|l\rangle\langle l|i\rangle$ , you'll still have the same probabilities.

Now the question is, is this "swapping" of the  $i$  a phase factor? Meaning, can encode this transformation as a multiplication by some  $e^{i\theta}$ , for some  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ ?

Well, the first term of  $|i\rangle$  is multiplied by  $i$ ; recall the definition of the complex exponential:

$$e^{i\theta} = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta$$

So this means the first term is multiplied by

$$\exp(i\frac{\pi}{2}) = 0 + i$$

The second term though, is multiplied by  $-i$ , this means, multiplied by:

$$\exp(-i\frac{\pi}{2}) = 0 + i \times (-1)$$

So we've found a variant of  $|i\rangle$ , that cannot be obtained by multiplying  $|i\rangle$  by a phase factor, and hence:

The proposed solution is *not* unique [up to a phase factor].

**Remark 2.** It may be interesting/possible to classify all such variants, meaning, see how much variety there is / how much structure they share and so forth.

**Exercise 5.** For the moment, forget that Eqs. 2.10 give us working definitions for  $|i\rangle$  and  $|o\rangle$  in terms of  $|u\rangle$  and  $|d\rangle$ , and assume that the components  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$  and  $\delta$  are unknown:

$$|o\rangle = \alpha|u\rangle + \beta|d\rangle \qquad |i\rangle = \gamma|u\rangle + \delta|d\rangle$$

a) Use Eqs. 2.8 to show that

$$\alpha^* \alpha = \beta^* \beta = \gamma^* \gamma = \delta^* \delta = \frac{1}{2}$$

b) Use the above results and Eqs. 2.9 to show that

$$\alpha^* \beta + \alpha \beta^* = \gamma^* \delta + \gamma \delta^* = 0$$

c) Show that  $\alpha^* \beta$  and  $\gamma^* \delta$  must each be pure imaginary.

If  $\alpha^* \beta$  is pure imaginary, then  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  cannot both be real. The same reasoning applies to  $\gamma^* \delta$ .

Let's start by recalling Eqs. 2.8, 2.9 and 2.10, which are respectively:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle o|u\rangle \langle u|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} & \langle o|d\rangle \langle d|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \\ \langle i|u\rangle \langle u|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} & \langle i|d\rangle \langle d|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \langle o|r\rangle \langle r|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} & \langle o|l\rangle \langle l|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \\ \langle i|r\rangle \langle r|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} & \langle i|l\rangle \langle l|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

$$|i\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \qquad |o\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle - \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \tag{3}$$

a) Let's start by recalling that the inner-product in a Hilbert space is defined between a bra and a ket, and that it should satisfy the following two axioms:

$$\langle C|\{|A\rangle + |B\rangle\} = \langle C|A\rangle + \langle C|B\rangle \text{ (linearity)}$$

$$\langle B|A\rangle = \langle A|B\rangle^* \text{ (complex conjugation)}$$

Furthermore, the scalar-multiplication of a ket is linear:

$$z \in \mathbb{C}, \qquad |zA\rangle = z|A\rangle$$

Then we can multiply  $|o\rangle = \alpha|u\rangle + \beta|d\rangle$  to the left by  $\langle u|$  to compute  $\langle u|o\rangle$ , using the linearity of the inner-product/scalar multiplication, and the fact that  $|u\rangle$  and  $|d\rangle$  are, by definition, unitary orthogonal vectors (meaning,  $\langle u|d\rangle = 0$  and  $\langle u|u\rangle = \langle d|d\rangle = 1$ )

$$\langle u|o\rangle = \alpha \langle u|u\rangle + \beta \langle u|d\rangle = \alpha$$

Because of the complex conjugation rule, we have

$$\langle o|u\rangle = \langle u|o\rangle^* = \alpha^*$$

And so by Eqs. 2.8 and the previous computation we have

$$\frac{1}{2} = \underbrace{\langle o|u\rangle}_{\alpha} \underbrace{\langle u|o\rangle}_{\alpha^*} = \alpha \alpha^* \quad \square$$



The process is very similar to prove  $\beta^* \beta = \gamma^* \gamma = \delta^* \delta = \frac{1}{2}$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} &= \langle o|d \rangle \langle d|o \rangle \\
&= (\langle d|o \rangle)^* \langle d|o \rangle \\
&= \left( \langle d|\{\alpha|u \rangle + \beta|d \rangle\} \right)^* \left( \langle d|\{\alpha|u \rangle + \beta|d \rangle\} \right) \\
&= \left( \underbrace{\alpha \langle d|u \rangle}_{=0} + \underbrace{\beta \langle d|d \rangle}_{=1} \right)^* \left( \underbrace{\alpha \langle d|u \rangle}_{=0} + \underbrace{\beta \langle d|d \rangle}_{=1} \right) \\
&= \beta^* \beta \quad \square \\
\frac{1}{2} &= \langle i|u \rangle \langle u|i \rangle \\
&= (\langle u|i \rangle)^* \langle u|i \rangle \\
&= \left( \langle u|\{\gamma|u \rangle + \delta|d \rangle\} \right)^* \left( \langle u|\{\gamma|u \rangle + \delta|d \rangle\} \right) \\
&= \left( \underbrace{\gamma \langle u|u \rangle}_{=1} + \underbrace{\delta \langle u|d \rangle}_{=0} \right)^* \left( \underbrace{\gamma \langle u|u \rangle}_{=1} + \underbrace{\delta \langle u|d \rangle}_{=0} \right) \\
&= \gamma^* \gamma \quad \square \\
\frac{1}{2} &= \langle i|d \rangle \langle d|i \rangle \\
&= (\langle d|i \rangle)^* \langle d|i \rangle \\
&= \left( \langle d|\{\gamma|u \rangle + \delta|d \rangle\} \right)^* \left( \langle d|\{\gamma|u \rangle + \delta|d \rangle\} \right) \\
&= \left( \underbrace{\gamma \langle d|u \rangle}_{=0} + \underbrace{\delta \langle d|d \rangle}_{=1} \right)^* \left( \underbrace{\gamma \langle d|u \rangle}_{=0} + \underbrace{\delta \langle d|d \rangle}_{=1} \right) \\
&= \delta^* \delta \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$


---

b) I don't think we can conclude here without recalling the definition of  $|r\rangle$ :

$$|r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle$$

Let's start with a piece from Eqs. 2.9, arbitrarily (we could use  $\langle i|l \rangle \langle l|i \rangle = \frac{1}{2}$ , but I think we'd still need the previous definition of  $|r\rangle$ ):

$$\langle i|r \rangle \langle r|i \rangle = \frac{1}{2}$$

But:

$$\langle r|i \rangle = \langle r|\{\alpha|u \rangle + \beta|d \rangle\} = \alpha \langle r|u \rangle + \beta \langle r|d \rangle$$

And:

$$\langle i|r \rangle = (\langle r|i \rangle)^* = (\alpha \langle r|u \rangle + \beta \langle r|d \rangle)^* = \alpha^* \langle u|r \rangle + \beta^* \langle d|r \rangle$$

So

$$\begin{aligned}
&\langle i|r \rangle \langle r|i \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \left( \alpha^* \langle u|r \rangle + \beta^* \langle d|r \rangle \right) \left( \alpha \langle r|u \rangle + \beta \langle r|d \rangle \right) = \frac{1}{2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \underbrace{\alpha^* \alpha}_{=1/2} \langle u|r \rangle \langle r|u \rangle + \alpha^* \beta \langle u|r \rangle \langle r|d \rangle + \beta^* \alpha \langle d|r \rangle \langle r|u \rangle + \underbrace{\beta^* \beta}_{=1/2} \langle d|r \rangle \langle r|d \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \frac{1}{2} \left( \langle u|r \rangle \langle r|u \rangle + \langle d|r \rangle \langle r|d \rangle \right) + \alpha^* \beta \langle u|r \rangle \langle r|d \rangle + \beta^* \alpha \langle d|r \rangle \langle r|u \rangle = \frac{1}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

Now if  $|r\rangle = \rho_u|u\rangle + \rho_d|d\rangle$ , then

$$\langle u|r\rangle \langle r|u\rangle + \langle d|r\rangle \langle r|d\rangle = \rho_u\rho_u^* + \rho_d\rho_d^* = 1$$

As  $\rho_u\rho_u^*$  would be the probability of  $|r\rangle$  to be up, and  $\rho_d\rho_d^*$  would be the probability of  $|r\rangle$  to be down, which are two orthogonal states in a two-states setting, and so the sum of their probability must be 1.

Hence the previous expression becomes:

$$\alpha^*\beta \langle u|r\rangle \langle r|d\rangle + \beta^*\alpha \langle d|r\rangle \langle r|u\rangle = 0$$

Note that so far, we haven't needed the expression of  $|r\rangle$ , but I think we don't have a choice but to use it to conclude:

$$|r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle$$

So, as the coefficient are real numbers:

$$\langle u|r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \langle r|u\rangle; \quad \langle d|r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \langle r|d\rangle$$

Replacing in the previous expression we have:

$$\alpha^*\beta \underbrace{\langle u|r\rangle}_{=1/\sqrt{2}} \underbrace{\langle r|d\rangle}_{=1/\sqrt{2}} + \beta^*\alpha \underbrace{\langle d|r\rangle}_{=1/\sqrt{2}} \underbrace{\langle r|u\rangle}_{=1/\sqrt{2}} = 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \frac{1}{2}\alpha^*\beta + \frac{1}{2}\beta^*\alpha = 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \boxed{\alpha^*\beta + \beta^*\alpha = 0} \quad \square$$

The process is very similar to prove  $\gamma^*\delta + \gamma\delta^* = 0$ ; one has to start again from a Eqs. 2.9, but this time, from another piece involving  $o$ , arbitrarily:

$$\langle o|r\rangle \langle r|o\rangle = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \left(\langle r|o\rangle\right)^* \langle r|o\rangle = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \left(\langle r|\{\gamma|u\rangle + \delta|d\rangle\}\right)^* \left(\langle r|\{\gamma|u\rangle + \delta|d\rangle\}\right) = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \left(\gamma^*\langle u|r\rangle + \delta^*\langle d|r\rangle\right) \left(\gamma\langle r|u\rangle + \delta\langle r|d\rangle\right) = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \underbrace{\gamma^*\gamma}_{=1/2} \langle u|r\rangle \langle r|u\rangle + \gamma^*\delta \langle u|r\rangle \langle r|d\rangle + \delta^*\gamma \langle d|r\rangle \langle r|u\rangle + \underbrace{\delta^*\delta}_{=1/2} \langle d|r\rangle \langle r|d\rangle = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \frac{1}{2} \underbrace{\left(\langle u|r\rangle \langle r|u\rangle + \langle d|r\rangle \langle r|d\rangle\right)}_{=1} + \gamma^*\delta \langle u|r\rangle \langle r|d\rangle + \delta^*\gamma \langle d|r\rangle \langle r|u\rangle = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \gamma^*\delta \underbrace{\langle u|r\rangle \langle r|d\rangle}_{=1/2} + \delta^*\gamma \underbrace{\langle d|r\rangle \langle r|u\rangle}_{=1/2} = 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \boxed{\gamma^*\delta + \delta^*\gamma = 0} \quad \square$$

c) Let's assume  $\alpha\beta^*$  is a complex number of the form:

$$\alpha\beta^* = a + ib, \quad (a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$$

But then:

$$\left(\alpha\beta^*\right)^* = a - ib = \alpha^*\beta$$

That's because, for two complex numbers  $z = a + ib$  and  $w = x + iy$ , we have:

$$(zw)^* = z^*w^*$$

Indeed:

$$zw = (a + ib)(x + iy) = (ax - by) + i(bx + ya)$$

Hence:

$$(zw)^* = (ax - by) - i(bx + ya)$$

But:

$$z^*w^* = (a - ib)(x - iy) = (ax - by) - i(bx + ya)$$

Hence the result. Back to our  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , we established in b) that:

$$\alpha^*\beta + \alpha\beta^* = 0$$

Which is equivalent from our previous little proof to:

$$\alpha^*\beta + (\alpha^*\beta)^* = 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (a + ib) + (a - ib) = 0 \Leftrightarrow 2a = 0 \Leftrightarrow \boxed{a = 0}$$

Which is the same as saying that the real part of  $\alpha^*\beta$  is zero, or that it's a pure imaginary number. The exact same argument applies for  $\gamma^*\delta$ .

## 3 Principles of Quantum Mechanics

### 3.1 Mathematical Interlude: Linear Operators

#### 3.1.1 Hermitian Operators and Orthonormal Bases

**Exercise 6.** *Prove the following: If a vector space is  $N$ -dimensional, an orthonormal basis of  $N$  vectors can be constructed from the eigenvectors of a Hermitian operator.*

We're here asked to prove a portion of an important theorem. I'm going to be somehow thorough in doing so, but to save space, I'll assume familiarity with linear algebra, up to diagonalization. Let's start with some background.

This exercise is about proving one part of what the authors call the *Fundamental theorem*, also often called in the literature the *(real) Spectral theorem*. So far, we've been working more or less explicitly in finite-dimensional spaces, but this result in particular has a notorious analogue in infinite-dimensional Hilbert spaces, called the *Spectral theorem*<sup>1</sup>.

Now, I'm *not* going to prove the infinite dimension version here. There's a good reason why quantum mechanics courses often start with spins: they don't require the generalized results, which demands heavy mathematical machinery (a copious amount of functional analysis, and in some formulation at least, the Lebesgue integral, hence portions of measure theory). You may want to refer to F. Schuller YouTube lectures on quantum mechanics<sup>2</sup> for a thorough development.

Finally, I'm going to use a mathematically inclined approach here (definitions/theorems/proofs), and as we won't need it, I won't be using the bra-ket notation.

---

To fix things, here's the theorem we're going to prove (I'll slightly restate it with minor adjustments later on):

<sup>1</sup>See <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/spectral+theorem> and [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spectral\\_theorem](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spectral_theorem)

<sup>2</sup>[https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GbgA9Xn\\_iM0&list=PLPH7f\\_7ZlzxQVx5jRjbfRGEzWY\\_upS5K6](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GbgA9Xn_iM0&list=PLPH7f_7ZlzxQVx5jRjbfRGEzWY_upS5K6); see also the lectures notes (.pdf) made by a student (Simon Rea): <https://drive.google.com/file/d/1nchF1fRGSY3R3rP1QmjUg7fe28tAS428/view>

**Theorem 1.** Let  $H : V \rightarrow V$  be a Hermitian operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ , equipped with an inner-product<sup>3</sup>.

Then, the eigenvectors of  $H$  form an orthonormal basis

Saying it otherwise, it means that a matrix representation  $M_H$  of  $H$  is diagonalizable, and that two eigenvectors associated with distinct eigenvalues are orthogonal.

For clarity, let's recall a few definitions.

**Definition 1.** Let  $L : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator on a vector space  $V$  over a field  $\mathbb{F}$ . We say that a non-zero  $\mathbf{p} \in U$  is an eigenvector for  $L$ , with associated eigenvalue  $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$  whenever:

$$L(\mathbf{p}) = \lambda \mathbf{p}$$

**Remark 3.** As this can be a source of confusion later on, note that the definition of eigenvector/eigenvalue does not depend on the diagonalizability of  $L$ .

**Remark 4.** Note also that while eigenvectors must be non-zero, no such restrictions are imposed on the eigenvalues.

**Definition 2.** Two vectors  $\mathbf{p}$  and  $\mathbf{q}$  from a vector space  $V$  over a field  $\mathbb{F}$  equipped with an inner product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  are said to be orthogonal (with respect to the inner-product) whenever:

$$\langle \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q} \rangle = 0_{\mathbb{F}}$$

The following lemma will be of great use later on. Don't let yourself be discouraged by the length of the proof: it can literally be shortened to just a few lines, but I'm going to be very precise, hence very explicit, as to make the otherwise simple underlying mathematical constructions as clear as I can.

**Lemma 1.** A linear operator  $L : V \rightarrow V$  on a  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  dimensional vector space  $V$  over the complex numbers has at least one eigenvalue.

*Proof.* Let's take a  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ . We assume  $V$  is not trivial, that is,  $V$  isn't reduced to its zero vector  $\mathbf{0}_V$ , and so we can always choose  $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}_V$ <sup>4</sup>.

Consider the following set of  $n + 1$  vectors:

$$\{\mathbf{v}, L(\mathbf{v}), L^2(\mathbf{v}), \dots, L^n(\mathbf{v})\}$$

where:

$$L^0 := \text{id}_V; \quad L^i := \underbrace{L \circ L \circ \dots \circ L}_{i \in \mathbb{N} \text{ times}}$$

It's a set of  $n + 1$  vectors, but the space is  $n$  dimensional, so its vectors are *not* all linearly independent. This means there's a set of  $(\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \in \mathbb{C}^n$  which are not all zero, such that:

$$\sum_{i=0}^n \alpha_i L^i(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}_V \tag{4}$$

Here's the "subtle" part. You remember what a polynomial is right, something like:

$$x^2 - 2x + 1$$

You know it's customary to then consider this a function of a single variable  $x$ , which for instance, can range through the reals:

$$L : \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{R} & \rightarrow & \mathbb{R} \\ x & \mapsto & x^2 - 2x + 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

This allows you to graph the polynomial and so forth:

---

<sup>3</sup>Remember, we need it to be able to talk about orthogonality.

<sup>4</sup>Note that if  $V$  is trivial, because an eigenvalue is always associated to a non-zero vector, there are no eigenvalues/eigenvectors, and the result is trivial.



Figure 1:  $L(x) = x^2 - 2x + 1$

But that's kindergarten polynomials. The more "correct" polynomials are *not* functions of a real variable. Rather, we say that  $L(x)$  or  $L$  is a polynomial of a single variable/indeterminate<sup>5</sup>  $x$ , where  $x$  stands for an abstract symbol.

The reason is that, when you say that  $x$  is a real number (or a complex number, or whatever), you tacitly assume that you can for instance add, subtract or multiply various occurrences of  $x$ , but when mathematicians study polynomials, they want to do so without requiring additional (mathematical) structure on  $x$ .

Hence,  $x$  is just a placeholder, an abstract symbol.

The set of polynomials of a single variable  $X$  with coefficient in a field  $\mathbb{F}$  is denoted  $\mathbb{F}[X]$ . For instance,  $\mathbb{C}[f]$  is the set of all polynomials with complex coefficient of a single variable  $f$ , say,  $P(f) = (3 + 2i)f^3 + 5f \in \mathbb{C}[f]$ .

Now you'd tell me, wait a minute: if I have a  $P(X) = X^2 - 2X + 1$ , am I not then adding a polynomial  $X^2 - 2X$  with an element from the field, 1?

Well, you'd be somehow right: the notation *is* ambiguous, in part inherited from the habits of kindergarten polynomials, in part because the context often makes things clear, and perhaps most importantly, because a truly unambiguous notation is unpractically verbose. Actually,  $X^2 - 2X + 1$  is a shortcut notation for  $X^2 - 2X^1 + 1X^0$ . So no: all the  $+$  here are between polynomials.

What does this mean that the  $+$  are between polynomials? Well, most often when you encounter  $\mathbb{F}[X]$ , it's actually a shortcut for  $(\mathbb{F}[X], +_{\mathbb{F}[X]}, \cdot_{\mathbb{F}[X]})$ , which is a *ring*<sup>6</sup> of *polynomials of a single indeterminate over a field*<sup>7</sup>  $\mathbb{F}$ . This means that mathematicians have defined a way This means that  $X^2 - 2X + 1$  is actually a shortcut for:

$$1 \cdot_{\mathbb{F}[X]} X^2 +_{\mathbb{F}[X]} (-2) \cdot_{\mathbb{F}[X]} X^1 +_{\mathbb{F}[X]} (1) \cdot_{\mathbb{F}[X]} X^0$$

Awful, right? Hence why we often use ambiguous notations and reasonable syntactical shortcuts.

<sup>5</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Indeterminate\\_\(variable\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Indeterminate_(variable))

<sup>6</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ring\\_\(mathematics\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ring_(mathematics)). Note that there is no notion of subtraction in a ring: the minus signs actually are part of the coefficients.

<sup>7</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Field\\_\(mathematics\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Field_(mathematics))

The main takeaway though is that mathematicians have defined a set of precise rules (addition, scalar multiplication, exponentiation of an indeterminate), and that by cleverly combining such rules and only such rules, they have obtain a bunch of interesting results, and we want to use one of them in particular.

Let's get back to our equation (4); let me add some parenthesis for clarity:

$$\sum_{i=0}^n (\alpha_i L^i(\mathbf{v})) = \mathbf{0}_V$$

Our goal is to transform this expression so that it involves a polynomial in  $\mathbb{C}[L]$ <sup>8</sup>.

Let's start by pulling out the  $\mathbf{v}$  on the left-hand side as such:

$$\left( \underbrace{\sum_{i=0}^n \alpha_i L^i}_{=:P(L)} \right) (\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}_V$$

What's  $P$  ? It's a function which takes a linear operator on  $V$  and returns ... A polynomial? But then, we don't know how to evaluate a polynomial on a vector  $\mathbf{v} \in V$  so there's an problem somewhere.

$P$  actually returns a new *linear operator on  $V$* :

$$P : \begin{pmatrix} (V \rightarrow V) \\ L \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} (V \rightarrow V) \\ \sum_{i=0}^n \alpha_i L^i \end{pmatrix}$$

But this means that while in (4) the  $\sum$  was a sum of complex numbers, it's now a sum of functions, and that  $\alpha_i L_i$  went from a multiplication between complex numbers to a scalar multiplication on a function.

The natural way, that is, the simplest consistent way, to do so, is to define them pointwise<sup>9</sup> for two functions  $f, g : X \rightarrow Y$ , we define  $(f + g) : X \rightarrow Y$  by:

$$(\forall x \in X), (f + g)(x) := f(x) + g(x)$$

The process is similar for scalar multiplication:

$$(\forall x \in X), (\forall y \in Y), (yf)(e) := yf(e)$$

We *equip* the space of (linear) functions (on  $V$ ) with additional laws. All in all,  $P$  is well defined<sup>10</sup>, and that we can indeed pull the  $\mathbf{v}$  out.

How then can we go from such a weird "meta" function  $P$  to a polynomial? Well, as we stated earlier, polynomials are defined by a set of specific rules: addition, scalar multiplication, and exponentiation of the indeterminate.

But if you look closely:

- Our point-wise addition has the same property as the additions on polynomial (symmetric, existence of inverse elements, neutral element, etc.)
- Similarly for our scalar multiplication;
- And our rules of exponentiation on function by repeated application also follows the rules of exponentiation for an indeterminate variable.

<sup>8</sup>Remember, this means a polynomial of a single variable  $L$ , with coefficient in  $\mathbb{C}$ .

<sup>9</sup><https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pointwise>

<sup>10</sup>Meaning, the laws we introduce on functions are consistent with the results we would otherwise get without using them; you can check this out if you want

This mean that if we squint a little, if we only look at the expression  $P(L)$  as having nothing but those properties, then it behaves exactly as a polynomial. Hence, for all intents and purposes, it "is" a polynomial, and we can manipulate it as such.

So we can apply the fundamental theorem of algebra<sup>11</sup>, we know that we can always factorize polynomials with complex coefficient as such:

$$(\exists(c, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) \in \mathbb{C}^{n+1}, c \neq 0), P(L) = c \prod_{i=0}^n (L - \lambda_i)$$

But don't we have a problem here?  $L$  is an abstract symbol, and we're "subtracting" it a scalar? Well, there are a few implicit elements:

$$P(L) = c \prod_{i=0}^n (L^1 + (-\lambda_i)L^0)$$

Let's replace this new expression for  $P(L)$  in our previous equation, which we can do essentially re-using our previous argument: the rules (addition, scalar multiplication, etc.) to manipulate polynomials are "locally" consistent with the rules to manipulate our (linear) functions:

$$\left( c \prod_{i=0}^n (L^1 - \lambda_i L^0) \right) (\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}_V$$

Note that  $L^0$  becomes the identity function, and by using the previous point-wise operations, we can reduce it to:

$$c \prod_{i=0}^n (L(\mathbf{v}) - \lambda_i \text{id}_V(\mathbf{v})) = c \prod_{i=0}^n (L(\mathbf{v}) - \lambda_i \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}_V$$

Now,  $c \neq 0$  by the fundamental theorem of algebra. So we must have:

$$\prod_{i=0}^n (L(\mathbf{v}) - \lambda_i \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}_V$$

Which implies that there's at least a  $\lambda_j$  for which

$$L(\mathbf{v}) - \lambda_j \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}_V \Leftrightarrow L(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda_j \mathbf{v}$$

But we've selected  $\mathbf{v}$  to be non-zero:  $\lambda_j$  is then an eigenvalue  $\lambda_j$  associated to the eigenvector  $\mathbf{v}$ . □

OK; let me adjust the fundamental theorem a little bit, and let's prove it.

**Theorem 2.** *Let  $H : V \rightarrow V$  be a Hermitian operator on a finite,  $n$ -dimensional vector space  $V$ , equipped with an inner-product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ .*

*Then, the eigenvectors of  $H$  form an orthogonal basis of  $V$ , and the associated eigenvalues are real.*

*Saying it otherwise, it means that a matrix representation  $M_H$  of  $H$  is diagonalizable, and that two eigenvectors associated with distinct eigenvalues are orthogonal.*

*Proof.* I'm assuming that this is clear for you that the eigenvectors associated to the eigenvalues of a diagonalizable matrix makes a basis for the vector space. Again, refer to a linear algebra course for more.

Furthermore, you can refer to the book for a proof of orthogonality of the eigenvectors associated to distinct eigenvalues<sup>12</sup>.

Note that I've included a mention to characterize the eigenvalues as real numbers: there's already a proof in the book, but it comes with almost no effort with the present proof, so I've included it anyway.

Remains then to prove that the matrix representation  $M_H$  of  $H$  is diagonalizable (and that the eigenvalues are real). Let's prove this by induction on the dimension of the vector space. If you're not familiar with proofs by induction, the idea is as follow:

<sup>11</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fundamental\\_theorem\\_of\\_algebra](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fundamental_theorem_of_algebra)

<sup>12</sup>I'm not doing it here, as I've avoided the bra-ket notation, and this would force me to talk about dual spaces, and so on.

- Prove that the result is true, say, for  $n = 1$ ;
- Then, prove that if the result is true for  $n = k$ , then the result must be true for  $n = k + 1$ .
- If the two previous points hold, then you can combine them: if the first point hold then by applying the second point, the result must be true  $n = 1 + 1 = 2$ . But then by applying the second point again, it must be true that the result holds for  $n = 2 + 1 = 3$ .
- And so on: the result is true  $\forall n \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$ .

$n = 1$  Then,  $H$  is reduced to a  $1 \times 1$  matrix, containing a single element  $h$ . This is trivially diagonal already, and because  $H$  is assumed to be Hermitian, the only eigenvalue  $h = h^*$  is real.

Induction Assume the result holds for any Hermitian operator  $H : W \rightarrow W$  on a  $k$ -dimensional vector space  $W$  over  $\mathbb{C}$ .

Let  $V$  be a  $k + 1$ -dimensional vector space over  $\mathbb{C}$ . By our previous lemma,  $H : V \rightarrow V$  must have at least one eigenvalue  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  associated to an eigenvector  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ .

Pick  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_{k+1}\} \subset V$  so that  $\{\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_{k+1}\}$  is an (ordered) basis of  $V$ <sup>13</sup>.

Apply the Gram-Schmidt procedure<sup>14</sup> to extract from it an (ordered) orthonormal basis  $\{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2, \dots, \mathbf{b}_{k+1}\}$  of  $V$ ; note that by construction:

$$\mathbf{b}_1 = \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{v}\|}$$

That's to say,  $\mathbf{b}_1$  is still an eigenvector for  $\lambda$ <sup>15</sup>.

Now we're trying to understand what's the matrix representation  $D_H$  of  $H$ , in this orthonormal basis. If you've taken the blue pill, you know how to "read" a matrix:

$$D_H = \left( \begin{pmatrix} \left| \right. \\ H(\mathbf{b}_1) \\ \left| \right. \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} \left| \right. \\ H(\mathbf{b}_2) \\ \left| \right. \end{pmatrix} \quad \dots \quad \begin{pmatrix} \left| \right. \\ H(\mathbf{b}_{k+1}) \\ \left| \right. \end{pmatrix} \right)$$

OK; let's start by what we know:  $\mathbf{b}_1$  is an eigenvector for  $H$  associated to  $\lambda$ , meaning:

$$H(\mathbf{b}_1) = \lambda \mathbf{b}_1 = \lambda \mathbf{b}_1 + \sum_{i=2}^{k+1} 0 \times \mathbf{e}_i = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Rewrite  $D_H$  accordingly, and break it into blocks:

$$D_H = \left( \begin{pmatrix} \lambda \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} \left| \right. \\ H(\mathbf{b}_2) \\ \left| \right. \end{pmatrix} \quad \dots \quad \begin{pmatrix} \left| \right. \\ H(\mathbf{b}_{k+1}) \\ \left| \right. \end{pmatrix} \right) = \left( \begin{array}{c|ccc} \lambda & & & \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & & \\ 0 & & & \end{array} \right) = \left( \begin{array}{c|ccc} \lambda & & & A \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & & \\ 0 & & & C \end{array} \right)$$

Where  $A$  is a  $1 \times k$  matrix (a row vector), and  $C$  a  $k \times k$  matrix. But then  $H$  is Hermitian, which means its matrix representation obeys:

$$D_H = (D_H^T)^* = D_H^\dagger$$

<sup>13</sup>Start with  $W = \{\mathbf{v}\}$ , and progressively augment it with elements of  $V$  so that all elements in  $W$  are linearly independent. If we can't select such elements no more, this mean we've got a basis. Ordering naturally follows from the iteration steps.

<sup>14</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gram%E2%80%93Schmidt\\_process](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gram%E2%80%93Schmidt_process)

<sup>15</sup> $H(\mathbf{b}_1) = H(\mathbf{v}/\|\mathbf{v}\|)$ , by linearity of  $H$ , this is equal to  $\frac{1}{\|\mathbf{v}\|}H(\mathbf{v})$ . But  $\mathbf{v}$  is an eigenvector for an eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , so this is equal to  $\frac{\lambda}{\|\mathbf{v}\|}\mathbf{v} = \lambda \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{v}\|} = \lambda \mathbf{b}_1$



This implies first that  $\lambda = \lambda^*$ , i.e  $\lambda$  is real, and we'll see shortly, can be considered an eigenvalue, as we can transform  $D_H$  in a diagonal matrix with  $\lambda$  on the diagonal.

Second,  $A^\dagger = (0 \ 0 \ \dots \ 0) = A$ , i.e:

$$\left( \begin{array}{c|ccc} \lambda & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ \hline 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & C & \\ 0 & & & \end{array} \right)$$

Third,  $C = C^\dagger$ . But then,  $C$  is a  $k \times k$  Hermitian matrix, corresponding to a Hermitian operator in a  $k$ -dimensional vector space. Using the induction assumption, it is diagonalizable, with real valued eigenvalues. Hence  $D_H$  is diagonalizable, and all its eigenvalues are real.

□

### 3.1.2 The Gram-Schmidt Procedure

## 3.2 The Principles

## 3.3 An Example: Spin Operators

## 3.4 Constructing Spin Operators

**Exercise 7.** Prove that Eq. 3.16 is the unique solution to Eqs. 3.14 and 3.15.

Let's recall all the equations, 3.14, 3.15 and 3.16

$$\begin{pmatrix} (\sigma_z)_{11} & (\sigma_z)_{12} \\ (\sigma_z)_{21} & (\sigma_z)_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} (\sigma_z)_{11} & (\sigma_z)_{12} \\ (\sigma_z)_{21} & (\sigma_z)_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} (\sigma_z)_{11} & (\sigma_z)_{12} \\ (\sigma_z)_{21} & (\sigma_z)_{22} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7)$$

By developing the matrix product and identifying the vectors components, the first two equations make a system of four equations involving four unknowns  $(\sigma_z)_{11}$ ,  $(\sigma_z)_{12}$ ,  $(\sigma_z)_{21}$  and  $(\sigma_z)_{22}$ :

$$\begin{cases} 1(\sigma_z)_{11} + 0(\sigma_z)_{12} = 1 \\ 1(\sigma_z)_{21} + 0(\sigma_z)_{22} = 0 \\ 0(\sigma_z)_{11} + 1(\sigma_z)_{12} = 0 \\ 0(\sigma_z)_{21} + 1(\sigma_z)_{22} = -1 \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} (\sigma_z)_{11} = 1 \\ (\sigma_z)_{21} = 0 \\ (\sigma_z)_{12} = 0 \\ (\sigma_z)_{22} = -1 \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \square \quad (8)$$

**Remark 5.** Observe that we are (were) trying to build a Hermitian operator with eigenvalues  $+1$  and  $-1$ . The fundamental theorem / real spectral theorem, assures us that Hermitian operators are diagonalizable, hence there exists a basis in which the operator can be represented by a  $2 \times 2$  matrix containing the eigenvalues on its diagonal:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Which is exactly the matrix we've found.

But now of course, you'd be wondering: wait a minute, right after this exercise, we're trying to build  $\sigma_x$ , which also has those same eigenvalues  $+1$  and  $-1$ , what's the catch?

Well, remember the diagonalization process:  $M$  diagonalizable means that there's a basis where it's diagonal. That is, there's a change of basis, which is an invertible linear function, which has a matrix representation  $P$ , such that the linear operation represented by  $M$  in a starting basis is now represented by a diagonal matrix  $D$ :

$$M = PDP^{-1}$$

Furthermore:

- The elements on the diagonal of  $D$  are the eigenvalues;
- The columns of  $P$  are the corresponding eigenvectors

So regarding  $\sigma_x$ , we still have a

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

But the catch is that before for  $\sigma_z$ ,  $P$  was the identity matrix  $I_2$  (because of our choice for  $|u\rangle$  and  $|d\rangle$ ). But now, given our values for  $|r\rangle$  and  $|l\rangle$ , we have:

$$|r\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad |l\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow P = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Note that the column order matters: the first column of  $P$  must be  $|r\rangle$ , and the first column of  $D$  must contain the eigenvalue associated to  $|r\rangle$ . But:

$$\sigma_x = PDP^{-1} \Leftrightarrow \sigma_x P = PD \underbrace{(P^{-1}P)}_{:=I_2} = PD = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence,

$$\sigma_x P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \Leftrightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} (\sigma_x)_{11} & (\sigma_x)_{12} \\ (\sigma_x)_{21} & (\sigma_x)_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Solving for the components of  $\sigma_x$ :

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} (\sigma_x)_{11} + (\sigma_x)_{12} = 1 \\ (\sigma_x)_{11} - (\sigma_x)_{12} = -1 \\ (\sigma_x)_{21} + (\sigma_x)_{22} = 1 \\ (\sigma_x)_{21} - (\sigma_x)_{22} = 1 \end{cases}$$

Which indeed yields the expected Pauli matrix, as described in the book, and computed by the authors using a different approach:

$$\boxed{\sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}$$

And obviously, the same can be done for  $\sigma_y$ : that's to say that, reassuringly, we reach the same results using pure linear algebra.

### 3.5 A Common Misconception

### 3.6 3-Vector Operators Revisited

### 3.7 Reaping the Results

**Exercise 8.** Calculate the eigenvectors and eigenvalues of  $\sigma_n$ . Hint: Assume the eigenvector  $\lambda_1$  has the form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha \\ \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $\alpha$  is an unknown parameter. Plug this vector into the eigenvalue equation and solve for  $\alpha$  in terms of  $\theta$ . Why did we use a single parameter  $\alpha$ ? Notice that our suggested column vector must have unit length.

Let's recall the context: we're trying to build an operator that allows us to measure the spin of a particle. We've started by building the components of such an operator, each representing our ability to measure the spin along any of the 3D axes:  $\sigma_x$ ,  $\sigma_y$  and  $\sigma_z$ . Each of them was built from the behavior of the spin we "measured": we extracted from the observed behavior a set of constraints, which allowed us to determine the components of the spin operator:

$$\sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Those are individually fine to measure the spin components along the 3 main axis, but we'd like to measure spin components along an arbitrary axis  $\hat{n}$ . Such a measure can be performed by an operator constructed as a linear combination of the previous three matrices:

$$\sigma_n = \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \hat{n} = \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_x \\ \sigma_y \\ \sigma_z \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} n_x \\ n_y \\ n_z \end{pmatrix} = n_x \sigma_x + n_y \sigma_y + n_z \sigma_z$$

**Remark 6.** Remember from your linear algebra courses that matrices can be added and scaled: they form a vector space.

The present exercise involves an arbitrary spin vector, that is, a linear combination of  $\sigma_x$ ,  $\sigma_y$  and  $\sigma_z$  that is of the form:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_n &= \sin \theta \sigma_x + \cos \theta \sigma_z \\ &= \sin \theta \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \cos \theta \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & -\cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

We're then asked to look for the eigenvalues/eigenvectors of that matrix, that is, we want to understand what kind of spin (states) can be encoded by such a matrix, and which values they can take.

---

Let's recall that to find the eigenvalues/eigenvectors, we need to diagonalize the matrix: assuming it can be diagonalized, it means that there's a basis where it can be expressed as a diagonal matrix; the change of basis is encoded by a linear map, thus a matrix, and so we must be able to find an invertible matrix  $P$  and a diagonal matrix  $D$  such that:<sup>16</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_n &= P D P^{-1} \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \sigma_n P = P D \\ \Leftrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & -\cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 a & \lambda_2 b \\ \lambda_1 c & \lambda_2 d \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Where  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  would be the eigenvalues, associated to the two eigenvectors:

$$|\lambda_1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ c \end{pmatrix}; \quad |\lambda_2\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} b \\ d \end{pmatrix}$$

Note that the previous equation implies that we must have:

$$(\forall i \in \{1, 2\}), \sigma_n |\lambda_i\rangle = \lambda_i |\lambda_i\rangle$$

Which is equivalent to saying, where  $0_2$  is the zero  $2 \times 2$  matrix, and  $I_2$  the  $2 \times 2$  identity matrix:

$$\sigma_n |\lambda_i\rangle - \lambda_i |\lambda_i\rangle = 0_2 \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad (\sigma_n - I_2 \lambda_i) |\lambda_i\rangle = 0_2$$

If we want a non-trivial solution (i.e.  $|\lambda_i\rangle \neq \mathbf{0}$ ), then it follows that we must have:

$$\sigma_n - I_2 \lambda_i = 0_2$$

This means that the matrix  $\sigma_n - I_2 \lambda_i$  cannot be invertible (for otherwise multiplying it by its inverse would yield, by the rule of invertibility  $I_2$ , but on the other side, from the matrix's definition, it would yield  $0_2$ , hence a contradiction, hence it's not invertible).

---

<sup>16</sup>This is "basic" linear algebra; the authors assume that you're already familiar with it to some degree (e.g. matrix product); don't hesitate to refer to a more thorough course on the subject for more. I'll quickly review here how diagonalization works

Non-invertibility of a matrix translates to their determinant being zero, which means the  $\lambda_i$  solves the following equation for  $\lambda$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
\det(\sigma_n - I_2\lambda) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow \begin{vmatrix} \cos\theta - \lambda & \sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & -\cos\theta - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow -(\cos\theta - \lambda)(\cos\theta + \lambda) - \sin^2\theta = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow -(\cos^2\theta - \lambda^2) - \sin^2\theta = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \lambda^2 - \underbrace{(\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta)}_{=1} = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \lambda^2 = 1 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \lambda = \begin{cases} 1 & = \lambda_1 \\ -1 & = \lambda_2 \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

Now that we have our eigenvalues, we can use them to determine the associated eigenvectors, as, remember, they are linked by:

$$(\forall i \in \{1, 2\}), \sigma_n|\lambda_i\rangle = \lambda_i|\lambda_i\rangle$$

And so:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_n|\lambda_1\rangle = \lambda_1|\lambda_1\rangle &\Leftrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & -\cos\theta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ c \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ c \end{pmatrix} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} a\cos\theta + c\sin\theta & = a \\ a\sin\theta - c\cos\theta & = c \end{cases} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} a(\cos\theta - 1) + c\sin\theta & = 0 \\ a\sin\theta + c(-\cos\theta - 1) & = 0 \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

Consider the first equation of this system: we're left with two main choices, depending on whether  $\cos\theta = 1$  or not. If it is, let's take  $\theta = 0$  for instance, but this would be true modulo  $\pi$ , then we must have  $\sin\theta = 0$ , and the first equation gives us nothing of value. The second then simplifies to  $c = 0$ , thus  $a = 0$ .

Let's now consider the case where  $\cos\theta \neq 1$ . The system can be rewritten as:

$$\begin{cases} a & = \frac{-c\sin\theta}{\cos\theta - 1} \\ a\sin\theta + c(-\cos\theta - 1) & = 0 \end{cases}$$

We can inject the first equation in the second to yield:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{-c\sin\theta}{\cos\theta - 1} \sin\theta + c(-\cos\theta - 1) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow \frac{-c\sin\theta}{\cos\theta - 1} \sin\theta + \frac{\cos\theta - 1}{\cos\theta - 1} c(-\cos\theta - 1) = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \frac{c(-\sin^2\theta - (\cos\theta - 1)(\cos\theta + 1))}{\cos\theta - 1} = 0 \\
&\Rightarrow c(-\sin^2\theta - (\cos^2\theta - 1)) = 0 \\
&\Rightarrow c(-\underbrace{(\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta)}_{=1} - 1) = 0 \\
&\Rightarrow c = 0 \Rightarrow a = 0
\end{aligned}$$

That's a struggle; we don't seem to be able to extract anything but the trivial solution; maybe there's some trigonometric trick to find the general solution<sup>17</sup>).

---

Instead, let's try to use and understand the authors' hint, which is to look for eigenvectors of the form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos\alpha \\ \sin\alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

---

<sup>17</sup>There definitely is one, see for instance <https://www.wolframalpha.com/input?i=diagonalize+%7B%7Bcos%2Csin%7D%2C%7Bsin%2C-cos%7D%7D>

Why is this a reasonable choice? Let's start by answering why we need a single parameter  $\alpha$ : it corresponds to the single degree of freedom we have in this case. Let's recall the two equivalent ways of counting the number of degree of freedom that were given in subsection 2.5:

1. First, point the apparatus in any direction in the  $xz$ -plane (remember for comparison that in subsection 2.5, we were allowed to take a direction in the  $xyz$ -space). A single angle is sufficient to encode this single direction (2 were needed in the  $xyz$  space). Furthermore, note that this angle would have has its coordinate in the  $xz$ -plane  $\cos \alpha$  and  $\sin \alpha$ , respectively in the  $x$  and  $z$  directions.

Note that we're really capturing *directions*: a point in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  contains too much information, as we want to identify all the points which share the same direction;

2. The second approach was to say that the general form of the spin state in  $xyz$ -space was given by a (complex) linear combination  $\alpha_u|u\rangle + \alpha_d|d\rangle$ . But, recall the definition of  $|l\rangle$  and  $|r\rangle$ , the vectors associated with the  $x$ -direction:

$$|r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle; \quad |l\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle$$

They didn't involved complex numbers. We started to need, and have proven in exercise L02E03 that this was mandatory once we had enough constraints to cover the three spatial directions (i.e., when dealing with  $|i\rangle$  and  $|o\rangle$ , after having already established the two other pairs of orthogonal vectors).

That's to say, we don't need complex numbers when we only have two directions, so actually, the general form of a spin in a plane is a *real* linear combination, which cuts down the number of degrees of freedom to 2.

Normalization adds yet another constraint, which cuts us down to a single degree of freedom. But, shouldn't the phase ambiguity brings us to ... *zero* degree of freedom? What are we missing?

Well, the idea of phase ambiguity was that we could multiply the vectors by a  $\exp(i\theta) = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta$ , for  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ . But we saw that we actually don't need complex numbers when we're in a  $2D$ -plane, which means  $\sin\theta = 0$ , and thus forces  $\cos\theta = 1$ , so the phase ambiguity doesn't impact the number of degrees of freedom;

3. Here's a third argument that we'll re-use in the next exercise<sup>18</sup>. Consider as a first guess an eigenvector of the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{pmatrix}; \quad (z_1, z_2) \in \mathbb{C}^2$$

We can put both complex numbers in exponential form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} r_1 \exp(i\phi_1) \\ r_2 \exp(i\phi_2) \end{pmatrix} = \exp(i\phi_1) \begin{pmatrix} r_1 \\ r_2 \exp(i(\phi_2 - \phi_1)) \end{pmatrix}; \quad (r_1, r_2, \phi_1, \phi_2) \in \mathbb{R}^4$$

We can then ignore the general phase factor  $\exp(i\phi_1)$ , e.g. choose  $\phi_1 = 0$ . Furthermore, we'll want the (eigen)vector to be normalized (remember, the eigenvector associated to the eigenvalues of of a Hermitian operator make an orthonormal basis), i.e.:

$$|r_1|^2 + |r_2 \exp(i\phi_2)|^2 = 1 \Leftrightarrow |r_1|^2 + |r_2|^2 = 1$$

But we're then losing a degree of freedom, meaning,  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  are not independent from each other: we can express them both in term of a single parameter, as long as the previous equation is satisfied. We can choose, as it'll make computation easier,  $r_1 = \cos \alpha$ ,  $r_2 = \sin \alpha$ , with  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ . Which brings us to:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha \\ \exp(i\phi_2) \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

---

<sup>18</sup>Source: <https://physics.stackexchange.com/a/720025>

If  $\phi_2$  varies, then our eigenvector isn't restricted to a plane. But, because our eigenvector will be a eigenvector of a Hermitian matrix, we know by the real spectral theorem<sup>19</sup> that it must be a (an orthonormal basis) vector of the  $xz$ -plane. So we can choose  $\phi_2 = 0$  to restrict it to a plane.

Note that the form of this vector is naturally normalized ( $\cos^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \alpha = 1$ ). Recall that it *must* be normalized because this column vector actually corresponds to:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha \\ \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix} = \cos \alpha \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \sin \alpha \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \cos \alpha |u\rangle + \sin \alpha |d\rangle$$

And the square of the magnitude of  $\cos \alpha$  encodes the probability for the measured value to correspond to  $|u\rangle$  while the square of the magnitude of  $\sin \alpha$  encodes the probability of the system to be measured in state  $|d\rangle$ , and both states are orthogonal: the total probability must be 1.

Alright, let's get to actually finding the eigenvectors associated to our eigenvalues. We can use the same trick as in the previous exercise L03E02.pdf: because of the diagonalization process, we have the following relation:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_n &= PDP^{-1} \Leftrightarrow \sigma_n P = PD(\underbrace{PP^{-1}}_{:=I_2}) = PD = P \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \Leftrightarrow \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & -\cos \theta \end{pmatrix}}_{=\sigma_n} \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & \cos \beta \\ \sin \alpha & \sin \beta \end{pmatrix}}_{=P} &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & \cos \beta \\ \sin \alpha & \sin \beta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\cos \beta \\ \sin \alpha & -\sin \beta \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Where the columns of  $P$  are the eigenvectors associated to the eigenvalues 1 and  $-1$ . Both have the same "form", as previously explained. We could have used the same approach as in the book (see the previous exercise), but you'll get with the same (kind?) of system in the end. Let's perform the matrix multiplication on the left and extract two equations from the four we can get by identifying the matrix components:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \cos \alpha + \sin \theta \sin \alpha & \cos \theta \cos \beta + \sin \theta \sin \beta \\ \sin \theta \cos \alpha - \cos \theta \sin \alpha & \sin \theta \cos \beta - \cos \theta \sin \beta \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\cos \beta \\ \sin \alpha & -\sin \beta \end{pmatrix} \\ \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \cos \theta \cos \alpha + \sin \theta \sin \alpha = \cos \alpha \\ \cos \theta \cos \beta + \sin \theta \sin \beta = -\cos \beta \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

**Remark 7.** *Strictly speaking, we don't really know if this is equivalent so far, as we're just extracting two equations from potentially four distinct equations. For correctness' sake, we could (I won't out of laziness) verify that the solution we find for those two equations also solve the two other remaining equations.*

The following trigonometric identities<sup>20</sup>:

$$\begin{aligned} \cos \theta \cos \alpha &= \frac{1}{2}(\cos(\theta - \alpha) + \cos(\theta + \alpha)); & \sin \theta \sin \alpha &= \frac{1}{2}(\cos(\theta - \alpha) - \cos(\theta + \alpha)) \\ \cos(\alpha - \pi) &= -\cos \alpha \end{aligned}$$

Allows us to rewrite the previous system as

$$\begin{aligned} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}((\cos(\theta - \alpha) + \cos(\theta + \alpha)) + (\cos(\theta - \alpha) - \cos(\theta + \alpha))) = \cos \alpha \\ \frac{1}{2}((\cos(\theta - \beta) + \cos(\theta + \beta)) + (\cos(\theta - \beta) - \cos(\theta + \beta))) = \cos(\beta - \pi) \end{cases} \\ \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \cos(\theta - \alpha) = \cos \alpha \\ \cos(\theta - \beta) = \cos(\beta - \pi) \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

And with the following identities:

$$\cos(\alpha + \frac{\pi}{2}) = -\sin \alpha; \quad \sin(\alpha + \frac{\pi}{2}) = \cos \alpha$$

<sup>19</sup>L03E01.pdf

<sup>20</sup>Look around for the proofs if needed; formulas can be found on Wikipedia

We reach:

$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} \theta - \alpha = \alpha \\ \theta - \beta = \beta - \pi \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} \alpha = \frac{\theta}{2} \\ \beta = \frac{1}{2}(\theta + \pi) \end{cases} \Rightarrow \boxed{\begin{cases} | + 1 \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha \\ \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta/2) \\ \sin(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix} \\ | - 1 \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \beta \\ \sin \beta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta/2 + \pi/2) \\ \sin(\theta/2 + \pi/2) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\theta/2) \\ \cos(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix} \end{cases}}$$

**Exercise 9.** Let  $n_z = \cos \theta$ ,  $n_x = \sin \theta \cos \phi$  and  $n_y = \sin \theta \sin \phi$ . Angles  $\theta$  and  $\phi$  are defined according to the usual conventions for spherical coordinates (Fig. 3.2). Compute the eigenvalues and eigenvectors for the matrix of Eq. 3.23.

Let's recall Eq. 3.23, which is general form of the spin 3-vector operator:

$$\sigma_n = \begin{pmatrix} n_z & (n_x - in_y) \\ (n_x + in_y) & -n_z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & (\sin \theta \cos \phi - i(\sin \theta \sin \phi)) \\ (\sin \theta \cos \phi + i(\sin \theta \sin \phi)) & -\cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

Observe (e.g. from the trigonometric circle) that:

$$\cos \theta = \cos(-\theta); \quad \sin \theta = -\sin(-\theta)$$

Hence:

$$\exp(-i\theta) := \cos(-\theta) + i \sin(-\theta) = \cos \theta - i \sin \theta$$

And we can simplify our previous expression of  $\sigma_n$  to:

$$\sigma_n = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \exp(-i\phi) \sin \theta \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin \theta & -\cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

Note that as we're now in the general case, we indeed have two degrees of freedom, encoded by the two angles  $\theta$  and  $\phi$ ; the *why* has been explicited in subsection 2.5.

We're still confronted to a spin operator: we expect the eigenvalues to be  $+1$  and  $-1$ <sup>21</sup>. But let's check this first: an eigenvector  $|\lambda\rangle$  associated to an eigenvalue  $\lambda$  must obey:

$$\sigma_n |\lambda\rangle = \lambda |\lambda\rangle$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \sigma_n |\lambda\rangle - \lambda |\lambda\rangle = 0 \Leftrightarrow (\sigma_n - I_2 \lambda) |\lambda\rangle = 0$$

But eigenvectors are non-zero, hence, again with  $0_2$  being the  $2 \times 2$  zero matrix:

$$\Leftrightarrow \sigma_n - I_2 \lambda = 0_2$$

And so this matrix  $\sigma_n - I_2 \lambda$  cannot be invertible<sup>22</sup>. This translates to a condition on the determinant:

$$\begin{aligned} \det(\sigma_n - I_2 \lambda) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow \begin{vmatrix} \cos \theta - \lambda & \exp(-i\phi) \sin \theta \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin \theta & -\cos \theta - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow -(\cos \theta - \lambda)(\cos \theta + \lambda) - \underbrace{\exp(i\phi) \exp(-i\phi)}_{=1} \sin^2 \theta = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow -(\cos^2 \theta - \lambda^2) - \sin^2 \theta = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \lambda^2 - \underbrace{(\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta)}_{=1} = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \lambda^2 = 1 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \boxed{\lambda = \begin{cases} +1 \\ -1 \end{cases}} \end{aligned}$$

<sup>21</sup>Remember from the real spectral theorem, or as the authors call it, the *fundamental theorem*, that because we have a Hermitian matrix, we know it's diagonalizable, that its eigenvalues are real, and that the corresponding eigenvectors form a orthogonal basis

<sup>22</sup>Again for otherwise, as recalled in L03E03, multiply both sides of the equation by its inverse, get an identity on the left-hand-side and still the zero matrix on the right-hand-side

The remaining difficulty is then in finding the eigenvectors. We can use the following argument<sup>23</sup>.

Consider as a first guess an eigenvector of the form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{pmatrix}; \quad (z_1, z_2) \in \mathbb{C}^2$$

We can put both complex numbers in exponential form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} r_1 \exp(i\phi_1) \\ r_2 \exp(i\phi_2) \end{pmatrix} = \exp(i\phi_1) \begin{pmatrix} r_1 \\ r_2 \exp(i(\phi_2 - \phi_1)) \end{pmatrix}; \quad (r_1, r_2, \phi_1, \phi_2) \in \mathbb{R}^4$$

We can then ignore the general phase factor  $\exp(i\phi_1)$ , e.g. set  $\phi_1 = 0$ . Furthermore, we want the vector to be normalized (this is an eigenvector associated to the eigenvalue of a Hermitian operator: it must be normalized per the real spectral theorem), i.e.

$$|r_1|^2 + |r_2 \exp(i\phi_2)|^2 = 1 \Leftrightarrow |r_1|^2 + |r_2|^2 = 1$$

But we're then losing a degree of freedom, meaning,  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  are not independent from each other: we can express them both in term of a single parameter, as long as the previous equation is satisfied. We can choose, as it'll make computation easier,  $r_1 = \cos \alpha$ ,  $r_2 = \sin \alpha$ , with  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ . Finally, let's rename  $\phi_2 = \phi_\alpha$ <sup>24</sup>, which brings us to consider eigenvectors of the form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha \\ \exp(i\phi_\alpha) \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

As for the previous exercise, we can use two different parameter  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  for each eigenvector. Again, because of the diagonalization process, we have the following relation

$$\sigma_n = PDP^{-1} \Leftrightarrow \sigma_n P = PD(\underbrace{PP^{-1}}_{:=I_2}) = PD = P \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

But the columns of  $P$  must contain our eigenvectors, so this is equivalent to:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \exp(-i\phi) \sin \theta \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin \theta & -\cos \theta \end{pmatrix}}_{=\sigma_n} \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & \cos \beta \\ \exp(i\phi_\alpha) \sin \alpha & \exp(i\phi_\beta) \sin \beta \end{pmatrix}}_{=P} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & \cos \beta \\ \exp(i\phi_\alpha) \sin \alpha & \exp(i\phi_\beta) \sin \beta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\cos \beta \\ \exp(i\phi_\alpha) \cos \alpha & -\exp(i\phi_\beta) \sin \beta \end{pmatrix}$$

Let's perform the matrix multiplication on the left:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \cos \alpha + \exp(i(\phi_\alpha - \phi)) \sin \theta \sin \alpha & \cos \theta \cos \beta + \exp(i(\phi_\beta - \phi)) \sin \theta \sin \beta \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin \theta \cos \alpha - \exp(i\phi_\alpha) \cos \theta \sin \alpha & \exp(i\phi) \sin \theta \cos \beta - \exp(i\phi_\beta) \cos \theta \sin \beta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\cos \beta \\ \exp(i\phi_\alpha) \cos \alpha & -\exp(i\phi_\beta) \sin \beta \end{pmatrix}$$

From which we can extract the following system of equations:

$$\begin{cases} \cos \theta \cos \alpha + \exp(i(\phi_\alpha - \phi)) \sin \theta \sin \alpha & = \cos \alpha \\ \cos \theta \cos \beta + \exp(i(\phi_\beta - \phi)) \sin \theta \sin \beta & = -\cos \beta \end{cases}$$

**Remark 8.** As for the previous exercise, I leave it to you to check that the solution we'll find for this system also solve the two other omitted equations.

<sup>23</sup><https://physics.stackexchange.com/a/720025>

<sup>24</sup>Note that I'm not yet identifying  $\phi_\alpha$  with  $\phi$ ; this will come naturally later on



It's tempting to set  $\phi = \phi_\alpha = \phi_\beta$ , but can we do so? Well, we know the two eigenvectors will have to be orthogonal: this adds an additional constraint, which decrease our degrees of freedom by one, meaning there's one superfluous variable in  $\{\alpha, \beta, \phi_\alpha, \phi_\beta\}$ . We can *choose* to implement this constraint by setting  $\phi_\alpha = \phi_\beta$ .

From there, we can indeed set  $\phi_\alpha = \phi_\beta = \phi$ , as this allows us to solve the equation for  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  more easily:

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \cos \theta \cos \alpha + \sin \theta \sin \alpha &= \cos \alpha \\ \sin \theta \cos \beta - \cos \theta \sin \beta &= -\cos \beta \end{cases}$$

Which is exactly the same system we had for the previous exercise, which was solved by:

$$\begin{cases} \alpha &= \theta/2 \\ \beta &= \frac{1}{2}(\theta + \pi) \end{cases}$$

With the same trigonometric identities as for the previous exercise:

$$\cos(\alpha + \frac{\pi}{2}) = -\sin \alpha; \quad \sin(\alpha + \frac{\pi}{2}) = \cos \alpha$$

We reach the following eigenvectors

$$\begin{cases} | +1 \rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta/2) \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix} \\ | -1 \rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \beta \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin \beta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\theta/2) \\ \exp(i\phi) \cos(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix} \end{cases}$$

Alright, let's make the same verifications the authors did in the book after the previous exercise. First, we get the expected eigenvalues  $+1, -1$ , which are the only two eigenvalues we have for a spin operator.

Then the two eigenvectors must be orthogonal, indeed (I only do it one way; the other is trivially similar):

$$\begin{aligned} \langle +1 | -1 \rangle &= (\cos(\theta/2) \quad \exp(-i\phi) \sin(\theta/2)) \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\theta/2) \\ \exp(i\phi) \cos(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= -\cos(\theta/2) \sin(\theta/2) + \exp(-i\phi + i\phi) \cos(\theta/2) \sin(\theta/2) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Finally, if we prepare a spin along the  $z$ -axis in the up state  $|u\rangle$ , then rotate our apparatus to lie along the  $\hat{n}$  axis, which *is not* restricted to the  $xz$ -plane anymore, we have according to the fourth principle<sup>25</sup>:

$$\begin{aligned} P(+1) &= |\langle u | +1 \rangle|^2 = \cos^2(\theta/2) \\ P(-1) &= |\langle u | -1 \rangle|^2 = \sin^2(\theta/2) \end{aligned}$$

Which then lead to the exact same computation regarding the expected value for the measurement:

$$\langle \sigma_n \rangle = \sum_i \lambda_i P(\lambda_i) = (+1) \cos^2(\theta/2) + (-1) \sin^2(\theta/2) = \boxed{\cos \theta}$$

Note also that  $P(+1) + P(-1) = 1$ .

**Exercise 10.** Suppose that a spin is prepared so that  $\sigma_m = +1$ . The apparatus is then rotated to the  $\hat{n}$  direction and  $\sigma_n$  is measured. What is the probability that the result is  $+1$ ? Note that  $\sigma_m = \sigma \cdot \hat{m}$ , using the same convention we used for  $\sigma_n$ .

There are essentially two ways of solving the issue.

The first one, and the simplest, is to observe that if we consider  $\hat{n}$  in a frame of reference where  $\hat{m}$  acts as our  $z$ -axis, then we're essentially in the case of our previous exercise: we've prepared a spin in the

<sup>25</sup>Don't hesitate to get back to the definition of  $|u\rangle$  and that of the inner-product if this isn't clear enough.

”up” state (now corresponding to a state where  $\sigma_m = +1$ ), we’ve moved our apparatus away from  $\hat{m}$  by a certain angle  $\theta^{26}$ , and we know from the previous exercise that the probability of measuring a +1 after aligning our apparatus with the  $\hat{n}$  axis is now

$$P(+1) = \cos^2 \frac{\theta}{2}$$

Which is exactly what we wanted to show (the answer is given in the book by the authors, after the exercise).

---

I’ll only draft the second approach, as I expect it to be more time consuming<sup>27</sup>. The idea is not to rely on the previous observation, and to consider that we’ve prepared to spin so that  $\sigma_m = +1$ , which means the state of the system is the eigenvector corresponding to this eigenvalue, which we know from the previous exercise, with  $\theta_m$  the angle between the  $z$ -axis and  $\hat{m}$ , and  $\phi_m$  the angle between the  $x$ -axis and the projection of  $\hat{m}$  on the  $xy$ -plane:

$$|+1_m\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta_m/2) \\ \exp(i\phi_m) \sin(\theta_m/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

If we then align the apparatus in the  $\hat{n}$  direction, with corresponding  $\theta_n / \phi_n$  angles, *which are relative to the  $z$ -axis, not  $\hat{m}$* , we now, by the same result, that the eigenvector corresponding to the probability of measuring a +1 in the  $\hat{n}$  direction is:

$$|+1_n\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta_n/2) \\ \exp(i\phi_n) \sin(\theta_n/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

Then, the probability to measure a +1 is given, again by using the fourth principle:

$$P(+1) = |\langle +1_m | +1_n \rangle|^2$$

We would then need to develop the inner-product between the two state vectors, and find a way to identify it with the half-angle between  $\hat{n}$  and  $\hat{m}$ .

All the difficulty is then in expressing this half-angle in terms of our four angles ( $\theta_m, \phi_m, \theta_n, \phi_n$ ). I suppose we get some insightful elements by cleverly:

- Expressing  $\hat{m}$  and  $\hat{n}$  both in rectangular coordinates;
- Observing that by the regular 3-vector dot product,  $\hat{n} \cdot \hat{m} = \|\hat{n}\| \|\hat{m}\| \cos \theta_{mn} = \cos \theta_{mn}$  (where  $\theta_{mn}$  is the angle between  $\hat{m}$  and  $\hat{n}$ )
- Observing that  $\cos \frac{\theta_{mn}}{2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \hat{n} \cdot (\hat{n} + \hat{m})$  (again from the regular 3-vector dot product, as  $\hat{n} + \hat{m}$  will be a (non-unitary) vector bisecting  $\theta_{mn}$ <sup>28</sup>)

### 3.8 The Spin-Polarization Principle

## 4 Time and Change

### 4.1 A Classical Reminder

### 4.2 Unitarity

### 4.3 Determinism in Quantum Mechanics

### 4.4 A Closer Look at $U(t)$

**Exercise 11.** *Prove that if  $U$  is unitary, and if  $|A\rangle$  and  $|B\rangle$  are any two state-vectors, then the inner product of  $U|A\rangle$  and  $U|B\rangle$  is the same as the inner product of  $|A\rangle$  and  $|B\rangle$ . One could call this the*

<sup>26</sup> $\theta$  really is the angle between  $\hat{m}$  and  $\hat{n}$ , not some angle between  $\hat{n}$  and the ”real”  $z$ -axis

<sup>27</sup>And hopefully, valid...

<sup>28</sup><https://math.stackexchange.com/a/2285989>: the parallelogram involved in the sum of two vectors in a rhombus.

conservation of overlaps. It expresses the fact that the logical relation between states is preserved with time.

The inner-product has been defined as the product of a bra and a ket. So the inner-product of  $U|A\rangle$  and  $U|B\rangle$  is the product of e.g. the bra associated to  $U|A\rangle$  and  $U|B\rangle$ . But in section 3.1.5 of the book, we've established that:

$$|C\rangle = M|D\rangle \Leftrightarrow \langle C| = \langle D|M^\dagger$$

Hence the inner-product we're looking for is:

$$\langle A|\underbrace{U^\dagger U}_I|B\rangle = \langle A|B\rangle \quad \square$$

**Remark 9.** The terminology is a bit confusing: we're talking about the inner-product of two kets, while we've defined the inner-product to be an operation between a bra and a ket. Overall, the bra-ket notation makes things a little more complicated than just having to deal with an inner-product space.

## 4.5 The Hamiltonian

## 4.6 What Ever Happened to $\hbar$ ?

## 4.7 Expectation Values

## 4.8 Ignoring the Phase-Factor

## 4.9 Connections to Classical Mechanics

**Exercise 12.** Prove that if  $M$  and  $L$  are both Hermitian,  $i[M, L]$  is also Hermitian. Note that the  $i$  is important. The commutator is, by itself, not Hermitian.

$$\begin{aligned} (i[M, L])^\dagger &= (i(ML - LM))^\dagger \\ &= (iML - iLM)^\dagger \\ &= ((iML - iLM)^T)^* && (\dagger\text{'s definition}) \\ &= ((iML)^T - (iLM)^T)^* && ((A+B)^T = A^T + B^T) \\ &= (iL^T M^T - iM^T L^T)^* && ((AB)^T = B^T A^T) \\ &= (-i(L^T M^T)^* + i(M^T L^T)^*) && ((zt)^* = z^* t^*; (z+t)^* = z^* + t^*) \\ &= i(M^\dagger L^\dagger - L^\dagger M^\dagger) && (\dagger\text{'s definition}) \\ &= i(ML - LM) && (L = L^\dagger; M = M^\dagger) \\ &= i[M, L] && \square \end{aligned}$$

**Exercise 13.** Go back to the definition of Poisson brackets in Volume I and check that the identification in Eq. 4.21 is dimensionally consistent. Show that without the factor  $\hbar$ , it would not be.

Let's recall first Eq. 4.21, where  $[\cdot, \cdot]$  is the commutator and  $\{\cdot, \cdot\}$  the Poisson brackets:

$$[F, G] \Longleftrightarrow i\hbar\{F, G\}$$

The Poisson brackets are defined in Volume I, Eq. (9) at the end of Lecture 9 (The Phase Space Fluid and the Gibbs-Liouville Theorem), as:

$$\{F, G\} := \sum_i \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial q_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial q_i} \right)$$

Where the  $p_i$  are the generalized momentum, and  $q_i$  are the generalized coordinates. Recall that a momentum is typically defined as a mass in motion, while the coordinates are simply distances to an origin:

$$[p_i] = \text{kg.m.s}^{-1}; \quad [q_i] = \text{m}$$

For clarity, let's rewrite one of those partial derivative in terms of a limit:

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial q_i} = \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \frac{F(q_i + \epsilon) - F(q_i)}{\epsilon}$$

First  $\epsilon$  must be of the same dimension than  $q_i$  in this case, for otherwise  $q_i + \epsilon$  is ill-defined; more generally it'll have the same dimension that the dimension of the differentiation variable.

Second, observe that, again because otherwise we'd be adding carrots and potatoes:

$$\left[ \sum_i \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial q_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial q_i} \right) \right] = \left[ \frac{\partial F}{\partial q_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial q_i} \right], \quad \text{for any arbitrary } i \text{ that is}$$

But then,

$$[i\hbar\{F, G\}] = \left[ \hbar \left( \frac{\partial F}{\partial q_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial q_i} \right) \right] = [\hbar] \left[ \frac{\partial F}{\partial q_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial p_i} \right] - [\hbar] \left[ \frac{\partial F}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial G}{\partial q_i} \right]$$

We know  $[\hbar] = \text{kg.m}^2.\text{s}^{-1} = [q_i p_i]$ , and if we make the limits explicit as we did before, it remains from the previous expression:

$$[i\hbar\{F, G\}] = [FG]$$

On the other side:

$$[[F, G]] = [FG - GF]$$

For  $FG - GF$  to be well defined, it must be that  $[FG] = [GF]$ . And so we're done:

$$\boxed{[[F, G]] = [FG] = [i\hbar\{F, G\}]} \quad \square$$

## 4.10 Conservation of Energy

## 4.11 Spin in a Magnetic Field

**Exercise 14.** *Verify the commutation relations of Eqs. 4.26.*

Let's first recall this set of equations:

$$[\sigma_x, \sigma_y] = 2i\sigma_z;$$

$$[\sigma_y, \sigma_z] = 2i\sigma_x;$$

$$[\sigma_z, \sigma_x] = 2i\sigma_y;$$

For clarity, let's recall the commutator's definition, for two observable  $F$  and  $G$ :

$$[F, G] = FG - GF$$

And finally, let's recall the Pauli matrices  $\sigma_x$ ,  $\sigma_y$  and  $\sigma_z$  (from Eqs. 3.20, at the end of section 3.4)

$$\sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then this is just elementary matrix multiplication.

$$[\sigma_x, \sigma_y] = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -i & 0 \\ 0 & i \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2i & 0 \\ 0 & -2i \end{pmatrix} = 2i \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\sigma_z} \quad \square$$

$$[\sigma_y, \sigma_z] = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2i \\ 2i & 0 \end{pmatrix} = 2i \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{\sigma_x} \quad \square$$

$$[\sigma_z, \sigma_x] = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ -2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = 2i \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{\sigma_y} \quad \square$$

## 4.12 Solving the Schrödinger Equation

**Exercise 15.** Take any unit 3-vector  $\mathbf{n}$  and form the operator

$$H = \frac{\hbar\omega}{2} \sigma \cdot \mathbf{n}$$

Find the energy eigenvalues and eigenvectors by solving the time-independent Schrödinger equation. Recall that Eq. 3.23 gives  $\sigma \cdot \mathbf{n}$  in component form.

Let's recall Eq. 3.23, which is general form of the spin 3-vector operator:

$$\sigma_n = \sigma \cdot \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} n_z & (n_x - in_y) \\ (n_x + in_y) & -n_z \end{pmatrix}$$

And the time-independent Schrödinger equation<sup>29</sup>:

$$H|E_j\rangle = E_j|E_j\rangle$$

In an earlier exercise (L03E04), we actually diagonalized  $\sigma_n$ : this gave us two eigenvalues  $+1$  and  $-1$ , and two eigenvectors:

$$|+1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta/2) \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix}; \quad |-1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\theta/2) \\ \exp(i\phi) \cos(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

Where  $\mathbf{n}$  was a regular unitary 3-vector expressed in spherical coordinates:

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} \sin \theta \cos \phi \\ \sin \theta \sin \phi \\ \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

Let's see how we can leverage this previous work to our advantage: such an  $\mathbf{n}$  vector still fit our purpose here. Furthermore, we know that the eigenvalues of  $\sigma_n$  are the only solutions to:

$$\sigma_n|F_j\rangle = F_j|F_j\rangle$$

But if we multiply both sides of this equation by  $\frac{\hbar\omega}{2}$ , we get exactly the equation we want to solve:

$$\underbrace{\frac{\hbar\omega}{2} \sigma_n}_H |F_j\rangle = \left( \frac{\hbar\omega}{2} F_j \right) |F_j\rangle$$

Multiplying the equation by a constant doesn't change the eigenvectors: they still are the only solutions, but the associated eigenvalues are now different:

$$\lambda_1 = \frac{\hbar\omega}{2}; \quad |\lambda_1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta/2) \\ \exp(i\phi) \sin(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\lambda_2 = -\frac{\hbar\omega}{2}; \quad |\lambda_2\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\theta/2) \\ \exp(i\phi) \cos(\theta/2) \end{pmatrix}$$

## 4.13 Recipe for a Schrödinger Ket

**Exercise 16.** Carry out the Schrödinger Ket recipe for a single spin. The Hamiltonian is  $H = \frac{\omega\hbar}{2} \sigma_z$  and the final observable is  $\sigma_x$ . The initial state is given as  $|u\rangle$  (the state in which  $\sigma_z = +1$ ).

After time  $t$ , an experiment is done to measure  $\sigma_y$ . What are the possible outcomes and what are the probabilities for those outcomes?

Congratulations! You have now solved a real quantum mechanics problem for an experiment that can actually be carried out in the laboratory. Feel free to pat yourself on the back.

<sup>29</sup>That's quite a fancy name for describing the eigenvectors of an operator, by comparison with the "iconic" Schrödinger equation...

**Remark 10.** *There's a typo in the statement of this exercise: the final observable is said first to be  $\sigma_x$  and then  $\sigma_y$ . The French version of the book uses  $\sigma_y$  for both, so that's what I'll do here.*

1. *Derive, look up, guess, borrow, or steal the Hamiltonian operator  $H$ ;*  
Well, let's take it from the authors:

$$H = \frac{\omega\hbar}{2}\sigma_z = \frac{\omega\hbar}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. *Prepare an initial state  $|\Psi(0)\rangle$ ;*

Again, from the exercise statement, let's prepare an up state:

$$|\Psi(0)\rangle = |u\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

3. *Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of  $H$  by solving the time-independent Schrödinger equation,*

$$H|E_j\rangle = E_j|E_j\rangle$$

I don't recall us already diagonalizing  $\sigma_z$  before, so let's do it, but I'll be shorter than usual. The eigenvalues are given by the non-invertibility condition of  $H - I\lambda$ , as the solutions of

$$\det(H - I\lambda) = \left(\frac{\omega\hbar}{2} - \lambda\right)\left(\lambda - \frac{\omega\hbar}{2}\right) = 0$$

Hence the two eigenvalues:

$$E_1 = \frac{\omega\hbar}{2}; \quad E_2 = -\frac{\omega\hbar}{2}$$

From which we can derive the two eigenvectors:

$$\underbrace{\frac{\omega\hbar}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_H |E_1\rangle = \frac{\omega\hbar}{2} |E_1\rangle$$

Assuming an eigenvector of a general form  $(a \ b)^T$  yields the following system:

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} a = a \\ -b = b \end{cases}$$

So  $b = 0$ ; furthermore, as  $|E_1\rangle$  must be unitary (from the fundamental theorem/real spectral theorem, we know the eigenvectors of a Hermitian operator, which  $H$  most definitely is, are unitary, because the eigenvectors make an orthonormal basis), we must have  $a = \pm 1$ ; let's chose more or less arbitrarily  $a = 1$ . Hence:

$$|E_1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Similarly for  $|E_2\rangle$ , assume a general form of  $(c \ d)^T$ , this yields the following system:

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} c = -c \\ -d = -d \end{cases}$$

By a similar argument, as before we find:

$$|E_2\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Remark 11.** *I'm not sure why we have an extra degree of freedom via the signs on the non-zero component of the eigenvectors; I can't think of an extra constraint.*

4. Use the initial state-vector  $|\Psi(0)\rangle$ , along with the eigenvectors  $|E_j\rangle$  from step 3, to calculate the initial coefficients  $\alpha_j(0)$ :

$$\alpha_j(0) = \langle E_j | \Psi(0) \rangle$$

That's an elementary computation:

$$\alpha_1(0) = 1; \quad \alpha_2(0) = 0$$

5. Rewrite  $|\Psi(0)\rangle$  in terms of the eigenvectors  $|E_j\rangle$  and the initial coefficients  $\alpha_j(0)$ :

$$|\Psi(0)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) |E_j\rangle$$

Again, quite elementary given the quantities involved:

$$|\Psi(0)\rangle = 1|E_1\rangle = |u\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

6. In the above equation, replace each  $\alpha_j(0)$  with  $\alpha_j(t)$  to capture its time-dependence. As a result,  $|\Psi(0)\rangle$  becomes  $|\Psi(t)\rangle$ :

$$|\Psi(t)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(t) |E_j\rangle$$

Naturally:

$$|\Psi(t)\rangle = \alpha_1(t) |E_1\rangle + \alpha_2(t) |E_2\rangle$$

7. Using Eq. 4.30<sup>30</sup>, replace each  $\alpha_j(t)$  with  $\alpha_j(0) \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_j t)$ :

$$|\Psi(t)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_j t) |E_j\rangle$$

Because  $\alpha_2(0) = 0$ , it only remains:

$$\boxed{|\Psi(t)\rangle = \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} t) |u\rangle}$$

OK, then the idea is that if we have an observable  $L$ , the probability to measure  $\lambda$  (where  $\lambda$  is then an eigenvalue of  $L$ ) is given by:

$$P_\lambda(t) = |\langle \lambda | \Psi(t) \rangle|^2$$

The authors are asking us to consider as an observable  $L = \sigma_y$ . Recall:

$$\sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

This is a matrix corresponding to the spin observable following the  $y$ -axis: we *must* expect its eigenvalues to be  $\pm 1$  and its eigenvectors to be  $|i\rangle$  and  $|o\rangle$ , but let's compute them all anyway for practice:

$$\det(\sigma_y - I\lambda) = \lambda^2 + i^2 = 0 \Leftrightarrow \lambda = \pm 1$$

For the eigenvectors, again we can assume a general form and solve the corresponding system of equations:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{\sigma_y} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = (+1) \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} -ib = a \\ ia = b \end{cases}$$

Both equations are actually equivalent (multiply the first one by  $i$  to get the second). We furthermore have an additional constraint as the eigenvectors are supposed to be unitary, which yields:

$$|E_1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ ia \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } a^2 + (ia)(-ia) = 1 \Leftrightarrow |E_1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1/\sqrt{2} \\ i/\sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix} = |i\rangle$$

---

<sup>30</sup>This equation corresponds exactly to what this step describes

Similarly:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{\sigma_y} \begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix} = (-1) \begin{pmatrix} c \\ d \end{pmatrix} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} -id = -c \\ ic = -d \end{cases}$$

Again, the two equations are equivalent (multiply the first by  $-i$  to get the second one), but we have an additional constraint, as the vector must be unitary. In the end, this yields:

$$|E_2\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} c \\ -ic \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } c^2 + (ic)(-ic) = 1 \Leftrightarrow |E_1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -i/\sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix} = |o\rangle$$

We may now apply our previous probability formula (Principle 4):

$$P_{+1}(t) = |\langle i|\Psi(t)\rangle|^2 = \left| \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \exp\left(-\frac{it}{\hbar}\right) \right|^2 = \boxed{\frac{1}{2}}$$

And either because the sum of probabilities must be 1, or by explicit computation:

$$P_{-1}(t) = |\langle o|\Psi(t)\rangle|^2 = \left| \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \exp\left(-\frac{it}{\hbar}\right) \right|^2 = \boxed{\frac{1}{2}}$$

#### 4.14 Collapse

### 5 Uncertainty and Time Dependence

#### 5.1 Mathematical Interlude: Complete Sets of Commuting Variables

##### 5.1.1 States That Depend On More Than One Measurable

##### 5.1.2 Wave Functions

##### 5.1.3 A Note About Terminology

#### 5.2 Measurement

**Exercise 17.** *Verify this claim.*

The claim being that any  $2 \times 2$  Hermitian matrix can be represented as a linear combination of:

$$I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

The general form of a  $2 \times 2$  Hermitian matrix is:

$$(\forall (r, r', w) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{C}), \quad \begin{pmatrix} r & w \\ w^* & r' \end{pmatrix}$$

Recall indeed that because for a Hermitian matrix  $L$  we have  $L = L^\dagger := (L^*)^T$ , hence the diagonal elements must be real.

Compare then with the general form for a linear combination of the four matrices above:

$$(\forall (a, b, c, d) \in \mathbb{R}^4), \quad a\sigma_x + b\sigma_y + c\sigma_z + dI = \begin{pmatrix} c+d & a-ib \\ a+ib & c-d \end{pmatrix}$$

Clearly we can identify  $w \in \mathbb{C}$  with  $a - ib$ : this is a general form for a complex number, and this naturally identifies  $w^*$  with  $a + ib$ , as expected.

Regarding the remaining parameters, we have on one side two real parameters, and on the other side, two non-equivalent equations involving two parameters, meaning, two degrees of freedom on both sides. So there's room to identify  $r$  with  $c+d$  and  $r'$  with  $c-d$ . More precisely, given two arbitrary  $(r, r') \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , we can always find  $(c, d) \in \mathbb{R}^2$  such that  $r = c+d$  and  $r' = c-d$ :

$$\begin{cases} r = c+d \\ r' = c-d \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} c = r-d \\ d = c-r' \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} c = r - (c-r') \\ d = (r-d) - r' \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} c = \frac{r+r'}{2} \\ d = \frac{r-r'}{2} \end{cases}$$



**Remark 12.** Note that (real) linear combinations of those 4 matrices are isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Q}^{31}$ .

### 5.3 The Uncertainty Principle

### 5.4 The Meaning of Uncertainty

### 5.5 Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality

### 5.6 The Triangle Inequality and the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality

### 5.7 The General Uncertainty Principle

**Exercise 18.** 1) Show that  $\Delta A^2 = \langle \bar{A}^2 \rangle$  and  $\Delta B^2 = \langle \bar{B}^2 \rangle$

2) Show that  $[\bar{A}, \bar{B}] = [A, B]$

3) Using these relations, show that

$$\Delta A \Delta B \geq \frac{1}{2} \langle \Psi | [A, B] | \Psi \rangle$$

OK, let's as usual recall the context:  $A$  and  $B$  are two observables. We defined the expectation value of an observable  $C$  with eigenvalues labelled as  $c$  to be:

$$\langle C \rangle := \langle \Psi | C | \Psi \rangle = \sum_c c P(c)$$

We construct from  $C$  a new observable  $\bar{C}$ :

$$\bar{C} := C - \langle C \rangle I$$

Where the identity  $I$  is sometimes implicit. The eigenvalues of  $\bar{C}$  are denoted  $\bar{c}$  and can be expressed in terms of  $C$ 's eigenvalues, denoted  $c$ :

$$\bar{c} = c - \langle C \rangle$$

From there, we defined the *standard deviation*, or the square of the uncertainty of  $C$ , assuming a "well-behaved" probability distribution  $P$ , by:

$$(\Delta C)^2 := \sum_c \bar{c}^2 P(c)$$

---

Let's first quickly prove that  $\bar{c} = c - \langle C \rangle$  are indeed the eigenvalues of  $\bar{C} = C - \langle C \rangle I$ . Consider an eigenvalue  $c$  of  $C$ , with associated eigenvector  $|c\rangle$ . It follows that:

$$\begin{aligned} C|c\rangle &= c|c\rangle \\ \Leftrightarrow C|c\rangle - \langle C \rangle |c\rangle &= c|c\rangle - \langle C \rangle |c\rangle \\ \Leftrightarrow (C - \langle C \rangle I)|c\rangle &= (c - \langle C \rangle)|c\rangle \\ \Leftrightarrow \bar{C}|c\rangle &= (c - \langle C \rangle)|c\rangle \end{aligned}$$

Meaning,  $|c\rangle$  is still an eigenvector of  $\bar{C}$ , but now associated to the eigenvalue  $c - \langle C \rangle$ . The  $|c\rangle$  still make an orthonormal basis of the state space, so there are no other eigenvectors (there can't be more eigenvectors than the dimension of the surrounding state-space).  $\square$

---

Similarly, we can prove that  $c^2$  are the eigenvalues associated to  $C^2$ , for an observable  $C$ : again start from an eigenvalue  $c$  of  $C$ , associated to an eigenvector  $|c\rangle$ :

$$C|c\rangle = c|c\rangle \Leftrightarrow C(C|c\rangle) = C(c|c\rangle) \Leftrightarrow C^2|c\rangle = c \underbrace{(C|c\rangle)}_{c|c\rangle} \Leftrightarrow C^2|c\rangle = c^2|c\rangle \quad \square$$

---

<sup>31</sup><https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quaternion>

---

1) We'll prove the fact for an arbitrary observable  $C$ : it'll naturally hold for both  $A$  and  $B$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
(\Delta C)^2 &:= \sum_c \bar{c}^2 P(c) \\
&= \sum_c (c - \langle c \rangle)^2 P(c) \quad (\text{definition of } \bar{c}) \\
&= \langle \Psi | \bar{C}^2 | \Psi \rangle =: \langle \bar{C}^2 \rangle \quad (\text{two previous properties}) \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$


---

2) This is an elementary calculation:

$$\begin{aligned}
[\bar{A}, \bar{B}] &:= \bar{A}\bar{B} - \bar{B}\bar{A} && (\text{commutator's definition}) \\
&= (A - \langle A \rangle I)(B - \langle B \rangle I) - (B - \langle B \rangle I)(A - \langle A \rangle I) && (\text{definition of } \bar{C}) \\
&= (AB - \langle A \rangle B - \langle B \rangle A + \langle A \rangle \langle B \rangle I) - (BA - \langle B \rangle A - \langle A \rangle B + \langle B \rangle \langle A \rangle I) \\
&= AB - BA \\
&=: [A, B] && (\text{commutator's definition}) \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Remember,  $\langle A \rangle$  and  $\langle B \rangle$  are real numbers (their multiplication is then commutative).

---

3) This is now just about following the reasoning preceding the exercise in the book, as suggested by the authors, by replacing  $A$  and  $B$  with  $\bar{A}$  and  $\bar{B}$ .

So let:

$$|X\rangle = \bar{A}|\Psi\rangle = (A - \langle A \rangle I)|\Psi\rangle; \quad |Y\rangle = i\bar{B}|\Psi\rangle = i(B - \langle B \rangle I)|\Psi\rangle$$

Recall the general form of Cauchy-Schwarz for a complex vector space<sup>32</sup>:

$$2|X||Y| \geq |\langle X|Y\rangle + \langle Y|X\rangle|$$

Where the norm is defined from the inner-product:

$$|X| = \sqrt{\langle X|X\rangle}$$

Injecting our two vectors in such a Cauchy-Schwarz equation yields:

$$\begin{aligned}
2\sqrt{\langle \bar{A}^2 \rangle \langle \bar{B}^2 \rangle} &\geq |i(\langle \Psi | \bar{A}\bar{B} | \Psi \rangle - \langle \Psi | \bar{B}\bar{A} | \Psi \rangle)| \\
&\geq |\langle \Psi | [\bar{A}, \bar{B}] | \Psi \rangle| && (\text{commutator definition}) \\
&\geq |\langle \Psi | [A, B] | \Psi \rangle| && (\text{from 2), } [\bar{A}, \bar{B}] = [A, B])
\end{aligned}$$

But from 1), we know that

$$2\sqrt{\langle \bar{A}^2 \rangle \langle \bar{B}^2 \rangle} = 2\sqrt{(\Delta A)^2 (\Delta B)^2} = 2\Delta A \Delta B$$

Note that the  $\sqrt{\cdot}$  can be removed "safely" as the  $\Delta C^2$  are defined as a sum of positive terms (no absolute values necessary).

Putting the two together yields the expected, *general uncertainty principle*:

$$\boxed{\Delta A \Delta B \geq |\langle \Psi | [A, B] | \Psi \rangle|} \quad \square$$

---

<sup>32</sup>I'm sticking to the authors' terminology and notations.

## 6 Combining Systems: Entanglement

### 6.1 Mathematical Interlude: Tensor Products

#### 6.1.1 Meet Alice and Bob

#### 6.1.2 Representing the Combined System

### 6.2 Classical Correlation

**Exercise 19.** Prove that if  $P(a, b)$  factorizes, then the correlation between  $a$  and  $b$  is zero.

Let's assume that  $P(a, b)$  factorizes, meaning, let's assume that there are two functions  $P_A$  and  $P_B$  such that:

$$P(a, b) = P_A(a)P_B(b)$$

Recall that the authors have defined the (statistical) correlation the quantity<sup>33</sup>:

$$\langle \sigma_A \sigma_B \rangle - \langle \sigma_A \rangle \langle \sigma_B \rangle$$

Where  $\langle \sigma_C \rangle$  is the average value of  $C$ 's observations, also known as the expected value<sup>34</sup>, and was defined earlier as:

$$\langle \sigma_C \rangle = \sum_c cP(c)$$

How should we understand  $\langle \sigma_A \sigma_B \rangle$ ? We're trying to find a way to express it as we just did for  $\langle \sigma_C \rangle$ . It's defined as the average of the product of  $\sigma_A$  and  $\sigma_B$ , meaning, the sum of all possible products of  $a$  and  $b$ , weighted by some probability distribution, but which one? Well, we don't really know its form specifically, but if for  $\langle \sigma_C \rangle$  it was a function of  $c$ , then we can guess it must now be a function of  $a$  and  $b$ : this is the  $P(a, b)$  from the exercise statement:

$$\langle \sigma_A \sigma_B \rangle = \sum_a \left( \sum_b abP(a, b) \right)$$

From there, it's just a matter of developing the computation, using our assumption that  $P(a, b)$  factorizes:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \sigma_A \sigma_B \rangle &= \sum_a \left( \sum_b abP(a, b) \right) \\ &= \sum_a \sum_b (abP_A(a)P_B(b)) \\ &= \sum_a \sum_b ((aP_A(a))(bP_B(b))) \\ &= \left( \sum_a aP_A(a) \right) \left( \sum_b bP_B(b) \right) \\ &= \langle \sigma_A \rangle \langle \sigma_B \rangle \end{aligned}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \boxed{\langle \sigma_A \sigma_B \rangle - \langle \sigma_A \rangle \langle \sigma_B \rangle = 0} \quad \square$$

**Remark 13.** If you're uncertain about the  $\sum$  manipulations, you may want to rewrite them as explicit sum over a small number of terms to convince you of their correctness.

### 6.3 Combining Quantum Systems

### 6.4 Two Spins

### 6.5 Product States

**Exercise 20.** Show that if the two normalization conditions of Eqs. 6.4 are satisfied, then the state-vector of Eq. 6.5 is automatically normalized as well. In other words, show that for this product state, normalizing the overall state-vector does not put any additional constraints on the  $\alpha$ 's and the  $\beta$ 's.

<sup>33</sup>Precise mathematical formulations are more involved, see for instance <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Correlation>

<sup>34</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Expected\\_value](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Expected_value)

Recall that we're in the context of two distinct state-spaces, each of them referring to a full-blown spin. Spin states for the first space (Alice's) are denoted:

$$\alpha_u|u\rangle + \alpha_d|d\rangle, \quad (\alpha_u, \alpha_d) \in \mathbb{C}^2$$

While spin states for the second space (Bob's) are denoted:

$$\beta_u|u\rangle + \beta_d|d\rangle, \quad (\beta_u, \beta_d) \in \mathbb{C}^2$$

Such states are, as usual, normalized: this is the condition referred to by Eqs. 6.4:

$$\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d = 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1$$

The two underlying state spaces (complex space, but really, Hilbert spaces) are glued by a tensor product: this allows the creation of new state space, called the *product state space*, which states can refer to both Alice's and Bob's state in a single expression.

**Remark 14.** *I encourage you to have a look at how Mathematicians formalize the notion of a tensor product of vector spaces: there is for instance a great introductory YouTube video<sup>35</sup> by Michael Penn on the topic.*

*The core idea is to start with what is called a formal product of vector spaces, which is a new space built from the span of purely "syntactical" combinations of elements of two (or more) vector spaces. Equivalence classes are then used to constrain this span to be a vector space.*

*For instance, the three following elements would be distinct elements in the formal product of  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}^3$ :*

$$2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 8 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix}$$

*But they would be identified by equivalence classes so as to be the same element in the tensor product of  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . We can keep identifying elements likewise until the operations (sum, scalar product) on the formal product space respect the properties the corresponding operations in a vector space.*

Here's Eq. 6.5, the general form for such a product state, living in the tensor product space created from Alice's and Bob's state spaces (I've just named it  $\Psi$  so as to refer to it later on):

$$|\Psi\rangle = \alpha_u \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |ud\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_u |du\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |dd\rangle$$

The claim we have to prove is that this vector is naturally normalized, from the normalization constraints imposed on the individual state spaces.

Let's start by computing the norm of product state (assuming an ordered basis  $\{|uu\rangle, |ud\rangle, |du\rangle, |dd\rangle\}$ ):

$$|\Psi|^2 = \langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} (\alpha_u \beta_u)^* & (\alpha_u \beta_d)^* & (\alpha_d \beta_u)^* & (\alpha_d \beta_d)^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix}$$

We can develop it further, using the fact that for  $(a, b) \in \mathbb{C}$ ,  $(ab)^* = a^* b^*$ :

$$\begin{aligned} |\Psi|^2 &= \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d + \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d \\ &= \alpha_u^* \alpha_u \underbrace{(\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d)}_{=1} + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d \underbrace{(\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d)}_{=1} \\ &= \underbrace{\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d}_{=1} \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

But the norm is axiomatically positively defined (i.e.  $(\forall \Psi \in \mathcal{H}), |\Psi| \geq 0$  with equality iff  $\Psi = 0_{\mathcal{H}}$ ) so:

$$\boxed{|\Psi| = 1} \quad \square$$

<sup>35</sup><https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=K7f2pCQ3p3U>

## 6.6 Counting Parameters for the Product State

## 6.7 Entangled States

**Exercise 21.** Prove that the state  $|\text{sing}\rangle$  cannot be written as a product state.

Let's recall the definition of the so-called *singlet* state  $|\text{sing}\rangle$ :

$$|\text{sing}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|ud\rangle - |du\rangle)$$

As for the previous exercise, we're still in the context of combining two state spaces: Alice's and Bob's, each representing the states of a spin, where the general form of Alice's state vectors is:

$$\alpha_u|u\rangle + \alpha_d|d\rangle, \quad (\alpha_u, \alpha_d) \in \mathbb{C}^2$$

While spin states for the second space (Bob's) are denoted:

$$\beta_u|u\rangle + \beta_d|d\rangle, \quad (\beta_u, \beta_d) \in \mathbb{C}^2$$

In this context, let's clarify the difference between a product state and a general composite state, with potential entanglement:

**Product state** obtained by developing a product between two states from Alice and Bob's state spaces, which yield something along the form:

$$\alpha_u\beta_u|uu\rangle + \alpha_u\beta_d|ud\rangle + \alpha_d\beta_u|du\rangle + \alpha_d\beta_d|dd\rangle$$

Remember from the previous exercise that such a state vector is naturally normalized, as a consequence of the normalization of the underlying vectors from Alice and Bob's space states;

**General state for a 2-spins system** obtained by linear combination of the vectors from the ordered basis  $\{|uu\rangle, |ud\rangle, |du\rangle, |dd\rangle\}$ :

$$\Psi = \psi_{uu}|uu\rangle + \psi_{ud}|ud\rangle + \psi_{du}|du\rangle + \psi_{dd}|dd\rangle$$

And impose a normalization condition on the scalar factors:

$$|\Psi| = 1 \Leftrightarrow \psi_{uu}^*\psi_{uu} + \psi_{ud}^*\psi_{ud} + \psi_{du}^*\psi_{du} + \psi_{dd}^*\psi_{dd} = 1$$

Clearly,  $|\text{sing}\rangle$  is normalized: it's at least a general state for a 2-spins system. Assume it is a product state. Then there exists  $(\alpha_u, \alpha_d, \beta_u, \beta_d) \in \mathbb{C}^4$  such that:

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_u\beta_d = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \alpha_d\beta_u = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \alpha_u\beta_u = 0 \\ \alpha_d\beta_d = 0 \end{cases}$$

But now, if  $\alpha_u\beta_u = 0$ , then at least either  $\alpha_u = 0$  or  $\beta_u = 0$ . Assume  $\alpha_u = 0$ . But then, we can't have  $\alpha_u\beta_d = 1/\sqrt{2}$ . Assume then  $\beta_u = 0$ . Yet in this case, we can't have  $\alpha_d\beta_u = -1/\sqrt{2}$ .

So the system isn't solvable and our previous assumption can't hold. Hence, there's no such  $(\alpha_u, \alpha_d, \beta_u, \beta_d) \in \mathbb{C}^4$ , and  $|\text{sing}\rangle$  is not a product state.  $\square$

## 6.8 Alice and Bob's Observables

**Exercise 22.** Use the matrix forms of  $\sigma_z$ ,  $\sigma_x$ , and  $\sigma_y$  and the column vectors for  $|u\rangle$  and  $|d\rangle$  to verify Eqs. 6.6. Then, use Eqs. 6.6 and 6.7 to write the equations that were left out of Eqs. 6.8. Use the appendix to check your answers.

As usual, let's recall our Pauli matrices:

$$\sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

The base vectors  $|u\rangle$  and  $|d\rangle$  are the canonical basis vectors for  $\mathbb{R}^2$ :

$$|u\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad |d\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

We're trying to understand how for instance an operator  $\sigma_x$  define on Alice's state spaces can be extended to work on a state vector, taken from a combined state space involving Alice's.

The core idea is that the operator will only act on the "component" of the vector that is related to Alice's state space, while leaving the components involving other state spaces untouched.

Eqs. 6.6 (first column below) simply encode how the spin operators act on the basis vectors, in Alice's state space; Eqs. 6.7 (second column below) are identical, but for Bob's state space:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_z|u\rangle &= |u\rangle; & \tau_z|u\rangle &= |u\rangle \\ \sigma_z|d\rangle &= -|d\rangle; & \tau_z|d\rangle &= -|d\rangle \\ \sigma_x|u\rangle &= |d\rangle; & \tau_x|u\rangle &= |d\rangle \\ \sigma_x|d\rangle &= |u\rangle; & \tau_x|d\rangle &= |u\rangle \\ \sigma_y|u\rangle &= i|d\rangle; & \tau_y|u\rangle &= i|d\rangle \\ \sigma_y|d\rangle &= -i|u\rangle; & \tau_y|d\rangle &= -i|u\rangle \end{aligned}$$

Now verifying that the matrix products indeed evaluates as such is child's play (matrix  $\times$  vector products), there's no use of being more explicit here.

For similar reasons, I'll just write a completed 6.8 here, but won't develop the computations: one just have to follow the aforementioned rule: act with the operator on the correct component, extract the eventual scalar factor, and generally update the corresponding vector component. This yields, in agreement with the appendix:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_z|uu\rangle &= |uu\rangle; & \tau_z|uu\rangle &= |uu\rangle \\ \sigma_z|ud\rangle &= |ud\rangle; & \tau_z|ud\rangle &= -|ud\rangle \\ \sigma_z|du\rangle &= -|du\rangle; & \tau_z|du\rangle &= |du\rangle \\ \sigma_z|dd\rangle &= -|dd\rangle; & \tau_z|dd\rangle &= -|dd\rangle \\ \hline \sigma_x|uu\rangle &= |du\rangle; & \tau_x|uu\rangle &= |ud\rangle \\ \sigma_x|ud\rangle &= |dd\rangle; & \tau_x|ud\rangle &= |uu\rangle \\ \sigma_x|du\rangle &= |uu\rangle; & \tau_x|du\rangle &= |dd\rangle \\ \sigma_x|dd\rangle &= |ud\rangle; & \tau_x|dd\rangle &= |du\rangle \\ \hline \sigma_y|uu\rangle &= i|du\rangle; & \tau_y|uu\rangle &= i|ud\rangle \\ \sigma_y|ud\rangle &= i|dd\rangle; & \tau_y|ud\rangle &= -i|uu\rangle \\ \sigma_y|du\rangle &= -i|uu\rangle; & \tau_y|du\rangle &= i|dd\rangle \\ \sigma_y|dd\rangle &= -i|ud\rangle; & \tau_y|dd\rangle &= -i|du\rangle \end{aligned}$$

**Exercise 23.** Prove the following theorem:

*When any of Alice's or Bob's spin operators acts on a product state, the result is still a product state.*

*Show that in a product state, the expectation value of any component of  $\sigma$  or  $\tau$  is exactly the same as it would be in the individual single-spin states.*

**Remark 15.** This is a bit long, but fairly straightforward.

As usual, let's recall the context. We have two state spaces, one for Alice, and one for Bob, each sufficient to describe a spin.

Spin states for Alice's and Bob's spaces are respectively denoted:

$$\alpha_u|u\rangle + \alpha_d|d\rangle, \quad (\alpha_u, \alpha_d) \in \mathbb{C}^2; \quad \beta_u|u\rangle + \beta_d|d\rangle, \quad (\beta_u, \beta_d) \in \mathbb{C}^2$$

Such states are normalized:

$$\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d = 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1$$

We use a tensor product to join the two spaces. Among all the possible linear combination from the resulting product space, which is a vector space, product states are those of the form (where the  $\alpha$ s and  $\beta$ s are constrained by the previous normalization conditions):

$$|\Psi\rangle = \alpha_u \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |ud\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_u |du\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |dd\rangle$$

Now, we want to act on such a product state with an operator from either Alice's state space ( $\sigma$ ) or Bob's ( $\tau$ ), which, as we've saw earlier, can naturally be extended from the individual spaces to the product spaces. Recall that the operators's definition in their own respective state spaces are identical

$$\tau_x = \sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tau_y = \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tau_z = \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

However, when acting on a product state (and more generally, on a vector from the product space), each will respectively only act on the corresponding part of the tensor product gluing basis vectors, for instance:

$$\sigma_x(\gamma|ab\rangle) = \gamma \sigma_x(|a\rangle \otimes |b\rangle) = \gamma |(\sigma_x(a))b\rangle$$

$$\tau_x(\gamma|ab\rangle) = \gamma \tau_x(|a\rangle \otimes |b\rangle) = \gamma |a(\tau_x(b))\rangle$$

Because the computation will be exactly symmetric, we're only going to do the work for Alice's operators.

**Remark 16.** *It would be interesting to see under which circumstances the result generalizes to arbitrary observables (Hermitian operators). It seems we would need for such an operator  $\sigma$  to transform the basis vectors  $|u\rangle$  and  $|d\rangle$  in such a way that the induced rotation and scaling to reach  $\sigma|u\rangle$  and  $\sigma|d\rangle$ , would somehow balance, so as to preserve the product state constraint. In particular,  $\sigma|u\rangle$  and  $\sigma|d\rangle$  should be orthogonal.*

*This is exactly what happens below, for the spin operators.*

---

Note that:

$$\sigma_x|u\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = |d\rangle; \quad \sigma_x|d\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = |u\rangle$$

Then:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_x|\Psi\rangle &= \alpha_u \beta_u \underbrace{((\sigma_x|u\rangle) \otimes |u\rangle)}_{|d\rangle} + \alpha_u \beta_d \underbrace{((\sigma_x|u\rangle) \otimes |d\rangle)}_{|d\rangle} + \alpha_d \beta_u \underbrace{((\sigma_x|d\rangle) \otimes |u\rangle)}_{|u\rangle} + \alpha_d \beta_d \underbrace{((\sigma_x|d\rangle) \otimes |d\rangle)}_{|u\rangle} \\ &= \alpha_u \beta_u |du\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |dd\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |ud\rangle \\ &= \alpha_d \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |ud\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_u |du\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |dd\rangle \\ &= \gamma_u \delta_u |uu\rangle + \gamma_u \delta_d |ud\rangle + \gamma_d \delta_u |du\rangle + \gamma_d \delta_d |dd\rangle \end{aligned}$$

Where, for the last step, we've just introduced some renaming (it'll be made explicit in a moment). Such a state will be a product state if the following hold:

$$\gamma_u^* \gamma_u + \gamma_d^* \gamma_d = 1; \quad \delta_u^* \delta_u + \delta_d^* \delta_d = 1$$

Let's transcribe this in terms of  $\alpha$ s and  $\beta$ s:

$$\alpha_d^* \alpha_d + \alpha_u^* \alpha_u = 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1$$

Which are but the normalization conditions underlying  $|\Psi\rangle$ :

$$\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d = 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1$$

Hence,  $\sigma_x|\Psi\rangle$  is a state product.  $\square$

We'll now do similar computations, but for  $\sigma_y$  and  $\sigma_z$ . Starting with  $\sigma_y$ , note that:

$$\sigma_y|u\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ i \end{pmatrix} = i|d\rangle; \quad \sigma_y|d\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -i \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -i|u\rangle$$

Then:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_y|\Psi\rangle &= \alpha_u\beta_u \underbrace{\left((\sigma_y|u\rangle) \otimes |u\rangle\right)}_{i|d\rangle} + \alpha_u\beta_d \underbrace{\left((\sigma_y|u\rangle) \otimes |d\rangle\right)}_{i|d\rangle} + \alpha_d\beta_u \underbrace{\left((\sigma_y|d\rangle) \otimes |u\rangle\right)}_{-i|u\rangle} + \alpha_d\beta_d \underbrace{\left((\sigma_y|d\rangle) \otimes |d\rangle\right)}_{-i|u\rangle} \\ &= i\alpha_u\beta_u|du\rangle + i\alpha_u\beta_d|dd\rangle - i\alpha_d\beta_u|uu\rangle - i\alpha_d\beta_d|ud\rangle \\ &= -i\alpha_d\beta_u|uu\rangle - i\alpha_d\beta_d|ud\rangle + i\alpha_u\beta_u|du\rangle + i\alpha_u\beta_d|dd\rangle \\ &= \gamma_u\delta_u|uu\rangle + \gamma_u\delta_d|ud\rangle + \gamma_d\delta_u|du\rangle + \gamma_d\delta_d|dd\rangle \end{aligned}$$

Where again, for the last step, we've performed some renaming (again, made explicit in a few lines). For this to be a product state, the following must hold:

$$\gamma_u^* \gamma_u + \gamma_d^* \gamma_d = 1; \quad \delta_u^* \delta_u + \delta_d^* \delta_d = 1$$

Again, transcribed in terms of  $\alpha$ s and  $\beta$ s this yields:

$$\begin{aligned} (-i\alpha_d)^* (-i\alpha_d) + (i\alpha_u)^* (i\alpha_u) &= 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1 \\ \Leftrightarrow ((i\alpha_d^*)(-i\alpha_d) + (-i\alpha_u^*)(i\alpha_u)) &= 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1 \\ \Leftrightarrow (\alpha_d^* \alpha_d + \alpha_u^* \alpha_u) &= 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1 \end{aligned}$$

Which again, is the normalization conditions for  $|\Psi\rangle$ . Hence,  $\sigma_y|\Psi\rangle$  is a product state.  $\square$

One last time for  $\sigma_z$ , start by observing:

$$\sigma_z|u\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = |u\rangle; \quad \sigma_z|d\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = -|d\rangle$$

Then:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_z|\Psi\rangle &= \alpha_u\beta_u \underbrace{\left((\sigma_z|u\rangle) \otimes |u\rangle\right)}_{|u\rangle} + \alpha_u\beta_d \underbrace{\left((\sigma_z|u\rangle) \otimes |d\rangle\right)}_{|u\rangle} + \alpha_d\beta_u \underbrace{\left((\sigma_z|d\rangle) \otimes |u\rangle\right)}_{-|d\rangle} + \alpha_d\beta_d \underbrace{\left((\sigma_z|d\rangle) \otimes |d\rangle\right)}_{-|d\rangle} \\ &= \alpha_u\beta_u|uu\rangle + \alpha_u\beta_d|ud\rangle - \alpha_d\beta_u|du\rangle - \alpha_d\beta_d|dd\rangle \\ &= \gamma_u\delta_u|uu\rangle + \gamma_u\delta_d|ud\rangle + \gamma_d\delta_u|du\rangle + \gamma_d\delta_d|dd\rangle \end{aligned}$$

The renaming is much simpler this time. Let's recall one last time the product state condition:

$$\gamma_u^* \gamma_u + \gamma_d^* \gamma_d = 1; \quad \delta_u^* \delta_u + \delta_d^* \delta_d = 1$$

Or, transcribed in terms of  $\alpha$ s and  $\beta$ s:

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_u^* \alpha_u + (-\alpha_d)^* (-\alpha_d) &= 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1 \\ \Leftrightarrow (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d) &= 1; \quad \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d = 1 \end{aligned}$$

Which again, is but the condition for  $|\Psi\rangle$  to be a state product. Hence,  $\sigma_z|\Psi\rangle$  is a state product.  $\square$



---

It remains to establish the last part of the exercise, namely, that the expectation is unchanged. Recall that for an observable  $A$ , given a state  $|\Psi\rangle$ , the expected value is defined as:

$$\langle A \rangle := \langle \Psi | A | \Psi \rangle$$

Now, we've been computing  $A|\Psi\rangle$  in the previous section for all "component" of Alice's spin; so we just have to take a product with  $\langle \Psi |$  to get the expected value.

Now remember, we consider an ordered basis  $\{|uu\rangle, |ud\rangle, |du\rangle, |dd\rangle\}$  to create column/row vectors, for instance:

$$|\Psi\rangle = \alpha_u \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |ud\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_u |du\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |dd\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix}$$

We previously established that:

$$\sigma_x |\Psi\rangle = \alpha_d \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |ud\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_u |du\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |dd\rangle$$

Hence:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \sigma_x \rangle &= \langle \Psi | (\sigma_x | \Psi \rangle) \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \\ \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u + \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d + \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d \\ &= \beta_d^* \beta_d (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u) + \beta_u^* \beta_u (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u) \\ &= \underbrace{(\beta_d^* \beta_d + \beta_u^* \beta_u)}_{=1} (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u) \\ &= \alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u \end{aligned}$$

I don't think we've already computed  $\langle \Psi | \sigma_x | \Psi \rangle$  in terms of  $\alpha$ s and  $\beta$ s before (we did earlier in L03E04 computed it in terms of  $\theta$ , an angle between two states), so let's do it (I'll use  $\sigma_x^A$  to indicate that we're using  $\sigma_x$  restricted to Alice's space; for clarity, I'll be using the *ordered* basis  $\{|u\rangle, |d\rangle\}$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \sigma_x^A \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \sigma_x^A | \Psi \rangle \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* & \alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \\ \alpha_d \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* & \alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_d \\ \alpha_u \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u \\ &= \langle \sigma_x \rangle \quad \square \end{aligned}$$


---

Let's do the same thing for  $\langle \sigma_y \rangle$ ; recall that we've computed earlier.

$$\sigma_y |\Psi\rangle = -i\alpha_d \beta_u |uu\rangle - i\alpha_d \beta_d |ud\rangle + i\alpha_u \beta_u |du\rangle + i\alpha_u \beta_d |dd\rangle$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_y \rangle &= \langle \Psi | (\sigma_y | \Psi \rangle) \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -i\alpha_d \beta_u \\ -i\alpha_d \beta_d \\ i\alpha_u \beta_u \\ i\alpha_u \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= i(-\alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u - \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d + \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d) \\
&= i(\beta_u^* \beta_u (\alpha_d^* \alpha_u - \alpha_u^* \alpha_d) + \beta_d^* \beta_d (\alpha_d^* \alpha_u - \alpha_u^* \alpha_d)) \\
&= i(\underbrace{\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d}_{=1} (\alpha_d^* \alpha_u - \alpha_u^* \alpha_d)) \\
&= i(\alpha_d^* \alpha_u - \alpha_u^* \alpha_d)
\end{aligned}$$

On the other hand:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_y^A \rangle &= \{ \Psi | \sigma_y^A | \Psi \} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* & \alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \\ \alpha_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* & \alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -i\alpha_d \\ i\alpha_u \end{pmatrix} \\
&= i(\alpha_d^* \alpha_u - \alpha_u^* \alpha_d) \\
&= \langle \sigma_y \rangle \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$


---

Finally for  $\langle \sigma_z \rangle$ , recall:

$$\sigma_z |\Psi\rangle = \alpha_u \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |ud\rangle - \alpha_d \beta_u |du\rangle - \alpha_d \beta_d |dd\rangle$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_z \rangle &= \langle \Psi | (\sigma_z | \Psi \rangle) \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ -\alpha_d \beta_u \\ -\alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d - \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u - \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d \\
&= \beta_u^* \beta_u (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d) + \beta_d^* \beta_d (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d) \\
&= (\underbrace{\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d}_{=1} (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d)) \\
&= \alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d
\end{aligned}$$

And on the other hand:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_z^A \rangle &= \{ \Psi | \sigma_z^A | \Psi \} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* & \alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \\ \alpha_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* & \alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \\ -\alpha_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d \\
&= \langle \sigma_z \rangle \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

## 6.9 Composite Observables

**Exercise 24.** Assume Charlie has prepared the two spins in the singlet state. This time, Bob measures  $\tau_y$  and Alice measure  $\sigma_x$ . What is the expectation value of  $\sigma_x \tau_y$ ?

What does this say about the correlation between the two measurements?

Let's recall the Pauli matrices involved:

$$\sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tau_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

And the singlet state:

$$|\text{sing}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|ud\rangle - |du\rangle)$$

Recall:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_x|u\rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} =: |d\rangle; & \sigma_x|d\rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} =: |u\rangle \\ \tau_y|u\rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ i \end{pmatrix} =: i|d\rangle; & \tau_y|d\rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -i \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} =: -i|u\rangle \end{aligned}$$

The expectation value of  $\sigma_x\tau_y$  is then:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \sigma_x\tau_y \rangle &:= \langle \text{sing} | \sigma_x\tau_y | \text{sing} \rangle \\ &= \langle \text{sing} | \sigma_x\tau_y \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|ud\rangle - |du\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle \text{sing} | \left( \underbrace{(\sigma_x|u\rangle)}_{|d\rangle} \otimes \underbrace{(\tau_y|d\rangle)}_{-i|u\rangle} - \underbrace{(\sigma_x|d\rangle)}_{|u\rangle} \otimes \underbrace{(\tau_y|u\rangle)}_{i|d\rangle} \right) \\ &= \frac{-i}{\sqrt{2}} \langle \text{sing} | (|du\rangle + |ud\rangle) \\ &= \frac{-i}{2} (\langle ud| - \langle du|)(|du\rangle + |ud\rangle) \\ &= \frac{-i}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle ud|du\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle ud|ud\rangle}_1 - \underbrace{\langle du|du\rangle}_1 - \underbrace{\langle du|ud\rangle}_0 \right) \\ &= \boxed{0} \end{aligned}$$

Remember for the last step that  $|du\rangle$  and  $|ud\rangle$  are orthonormal basis vectors.

On to the correlation between the two measurements: recall from section 6.2 that the statistical correlation between an observable  $\sigma_A$  in Alice's space and an observable  $\sigma_B$  in Bob's space was defined as the quantity:

$$\langle \sigma_A\sigma_B \rangle - \langle \sigma_A \rangle \langle \sigma_B \rangle$$

Hence in our case, the correlation between the two measurements is (the authors previously computed  $\langle \sigma_x \rangle = 0$  and  $\langle \sigma_y \rangle = 0$ : the computation of  $\langle \tau_y \rangle$  would be identical as for the latter)

$$\langle \sigma_x\tau_y \rangle - \langle \sigma_x \rangle \langle \tau_y \rangle = 0$$

Hence, we can conclude that the two measurements aren't correlated at all.

**Exercise 25.** Next, Charlie prepares the spins in a different state, called  $|T_1\rangle$ , where

$$|T_1\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|ud\rangle + |du\rangle)$$

In these examples,  $T$  stands for triplet. These triplet states are completely different from the states in the coin and die examples. What are the expectation values of the operators  $\sigma_z\tau_z$ ,  $\sigma_x\tau_x$ , and  $\sigma_y\tau_y$ ?

What a difference a sign can make!

This is the same kind of computations there were done in the previous exercise, and earlier in the book. As usual, recall the Pauli matrices:

$$\tau_x = \sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tau_y = \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tau_z = \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Also recall, from L06E04, the rules for acting on composite state vectors<sup>36</sup>:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_z|uu\rangle &= |uu\rangle; & \tau_z|uu\rangle &= |uu\rangle \\
\sigma_z|ud\rangle &= |ud\rangle; & \tau_z|ud\rangle &= -|ud\rangle \\
\sigma_z|du\rangle &= -|du\rangle; & \tau_z|du\rangle &= |du\rangle \\
\sigma_z|dd\rangle &= -|dd\rangle; & \tau_z|dd\rangle &= -|dd\rangle \\
\hline
\sigma_x|uu\rangle &= |du\rangle; & \tau_x|uu\rangle &= |ud\rangle \\
\sigma_x|ud\rangle &= |dd\rangle; & \tau_x|ud\rangle &= |uu\rangle \\
\sigma_x|du\rangle &= |uu\rangle; & \tau_x|du\rangle &= |dd\rangle \\
\sigma_x|dd\rangle &= |ud\rangle; & \tau_x|dd\rangle &= |du\rangle \\
\hline
\sigma_y|uu\rangle &= i|du\rangle; & \tau_y|uu\rangle &= i|ud\rangle \\
\sigma_y|ud\rangle &= i|dd\rangle; & \tau_y|ud\rangle &= -i|uu\rangle \\
\sigma_y|du\rangle &= -i|uu\rangle; & \tau_y|du\rangle &= i|dd\rangle \\
\sigma_y|dd\rangle &= -i|ud\rangle; & \tau_y|dd\rangle &= -i|du\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

We now have everything we need to compute the expectation values.

---


$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle &:= \langle T_1 | \sigma_z \tau_z | T_1 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | \sigma_z \tau_z (|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | \sigma_z (-|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\
&= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | (|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} (\langle ud| + \langle du|)(|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle ud|ud\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle ud|du\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle du|ud\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle du|du\rangle}_1 \right) \\
&= \boxed{-1}
\end{aligned}$$

For the last step, remember, as for the previous exercise, that  $|du\rangle$  and  $|ud\rangle$  are orthonormal basis vectors.

---


$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_x \tau_x \rangle &:= \langle T_1 | \sigma_x \tau_x | T_1 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | \sigma_x \tau_x (|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | \sigma_x (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | (|du\rangle + |ud\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} (\langle ud| + \langle du|)(|du\rangle + |ud\rangle) \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle ud|du\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle ud|ud\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle du|du\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle du|ud\rangle}_0 \right) \\
&= \boxed{+1}
\end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>36</sup>You have the same in the book's appendix

---


$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_y \tau_y \rangle &:= \langle T_1 | \sigma_y \tau_y | T_1 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | \sigma_y \tau_y (|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | \sigma_y (-i|uu\rangle + i|dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_1 | (-i|du\rangle - i|ud\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} (\langle ud| + \langle du|)(|du\rangle + |ud\rangle) \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle ud|du\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle ud|ud\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle du|du\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle du|ud\rangle}_0 \right) \\
&= \boxed{+1}
\end{aligned}$$

**Exercise 26.** Do the same for the other two entangled triplet states,

$$|T_2\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle)$$

$$|T_3\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle)$$

As for previous exercise, this is just about crunching numbers. We won't be using the Pauli matrices explicitly here; instead, we'll use the multiplication table from L06E04

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_z |uu\rangle &= |uu\rangle; & \tau_z |uu\rangle &= |uu\rangle \\
\sigma_z |ud\rangle &= |ud\rangle; & \tau_z |ud\rangle &= -|ud\rangle \\
\sigma_z |du\rangle &= -|du\rangle; & \tau_z |du\rangle &= |du\rangle \\
\sigma_z |dd\rangle &= -|dd\rangle; & \tau_z |dd\rangle &= -|dd\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

---


$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_x |uu\rangle &= |du\rangle; & \tau_x |uu\rangle &= |ud\rangle \\
\sigma_x |ud\rangle &= |dd\rangle; & \tau_x |ud\rangle &= |uu\rangle \\
\sigma_x |du\rangle &= |uu\rangle; & \tau_x |du\rangle &= |dd\rangle \\
\sigma_x |dd\rangle &= |ud\rangle; & \tau_x |dd\rangle &= |du\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

---


$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_y |uu\rangle &= i|du\rangle; & \tau_y |uu\rangle &= i|ud\rangle \\
\sigma_y |ud\rangle &= i|dd\rangle; & \tau_y |ud\rangle &= -i|uu\rangle \\
\sigma_y |du\rangle &= -i|uu\rangle; & \tau_y |du\rangle &= i|dd\rangle \\
\sigma_y |dd\rangle &= -i|ud\rangle; & \tau_y |dd\rangle &= -i|du\rangle
\end{aligned}$$


---

As the computations are fairly similar, and to save space, I'll be computing the expectation values for  $T_2$  and  $T_3$  in parallel, distinguishing them by a subscript number.

Let's start with  $\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle_2 &:= \langle T_2 | \sigma_z \tau_z | T_2 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | \sigma_z \tau_z (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | \sigma_z (|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} (\langle uu| + \langle dd|) (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle uu|uu\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle uu|dd\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle dd|uu\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle dd|dd\rangle}_1 \right) \\
&= \boxed{+1}
\end{aligned}
\qquad
\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle_3 &:= \langle T_3 | \sigma_z \tau_z | T_3 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | \sigma_z \tau_z (|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | \sigma_z (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | (|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} (\langle uu| - \langle dd|) (|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle uu|uu\rangle}_1 - \underbrace{\langle uu|dd\rangle}_0 - \underbrace{\langle dd|uu\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle dd|dd\rangle}_1 \right) \\
&= \boxed{+1}
\end{aligned}$$

Moving on to  $\langle \sigma_x \tau_x \rangle$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_x \tau_x \rangle_2 &:= \langle T_2 | \sigma_x \tau_x | T_2 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | \sigma_x \tau_x (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | \sigma_x (|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | (|dd\rangle + |uu\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} (\langle uu| + \langle dd|) (|dd\rangle + |uu\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle uu|dd\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle uu|uu\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle dd|dd\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle dd|uu\rangle}_0 \right) \\
&= \boxed{+1}
\end{aligned}
\qquad
\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_x \tau_x \rangle_3 &:= \langle T_3 | \sigma_x \tau_x | T_3 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | \sigma_x \tau_x (|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | \sigma_x (|ud\rangle - |du\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | (|dd\rangle - |uu\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} (\langle uu| - \langle dd|) (|dd\rangle - |uu\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle uu|dd\rangle}_0 - \underbrace{\langle uu|uu\rangle}_1 - \underbrace{\langle dd|dd\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle dd|uu\rangle}_0 \right) \\
&= \boxed{-1}
\end{aligned}$$

Finally for  $\langle \sigma_y \tau_y \rangle$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_y \tau_y \rangle_2 &:= \langle T_2 | \sigma_y \tau_y | T_2 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | \sigma_y \tau_y (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | \sigma_y (i|ud\rangle - i|du\rangle) \\
&= \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_2 | (i|dd\rangle + i|uu\rangle) \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} (\langle uu| + \langle dd|) (|dd\rangle + |uu\rangle) \\
&= \frac{-1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle uu|dd\rangle}_0 + \underbrace{\langle uu|uu\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle dd|dd\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle dd|uu\rangle}_0 \right) \\
&= \boxed{-1}
\end{aligned}
\qquad
\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_y \tau_y \rangle_3 &:= \langle T_3 | \sigma_y \tau_y | T_3 \rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | \sigma_y \tau_y (|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | \sigma_y (i|ud\rangle + i|du\rangle) \\
&= \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \langle T_3 | (i|dd\rangle - i|uu\rangle) \\
&= -\frac{1}{2} (\langle uu| - \langle dd|) (|dd\rangle - |uu\rangle) \\
&= \frac{-1}{2} \left( \underbrace{\langle uu|dd\rangle}_0 - \underbrace{\langle uu|uu\rangle}_1 - \underbrace{\langle dd|dd\rangle}_1 + \underbrace{\langle dd|uu\rangle}_0 \right) \\
&= \boxed{+1}
\end{aligned}$$

We can conclude, from those expectation values alone, that whenever:

- The expectation value is  $-1$ , Bob and Alice measure a spin pointing in different directions;
- The expectation value is  $+1$ , Bob and Alice measure a spin pointing in the same direction.

I just want to spend a few more lines to make something clear. Recall the definition of  $|\text{sing}\rangle$ :

$$|\text{sing}\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|ud\rangle - |du\rangle)$$

The argument of the authors was that, the reason for  $\langle \tau_z \sigma_z \rangle$  to be  $-1$  was that  $|\text{sing}\rangle$  is built from two spins, one of which is always up while the other is down, and we're measuring both spin alongside the axis on which they are either up or down.

However, in the case of e.g.  $\langle \tau_x \sigma_x \rangle$ , the answer was not as obviously, because we're in this case measuring the spins alongside the  $x$ -axis, and it's not immediate from the expression of  $|\text{sing}\rangle$  what kind of balance we have alongside the  $x$ -axis.

Let's do a little experiment. Recall the definition of the "basis vectors" for the  $x$ -axis, left and right:

$$|r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|u\rangle + |d\rangle); \quad |l\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|u\rangle - |d\rangle)$$

We want to express, say,  $T_3$  in terms of  $|l\rangle$  and  $|r\rangle$ , to see if indeed, when expressed as such,  $T_3$  is created from two spins such that when one is left, the other is right, which would be concordant with the idea that  $\langle \sigma_x \tau_x \rangle_3 = -1$ . Let's start by rewriting  $|u\rangle$  and  $|d\rangle$  in terms of  $|r\rangle$  and  $|l\rangle$ :

$$\begin{cases} |r\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|u\rangle + |d\rangle) \\ |l\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|u\rangle - |d\rangle) \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} |u\rangle = \sqrt{2}|r\rangle - |d\rangle \\ |d\rangle = -\sqrt{2}|l\rangle + |u\rangle \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} |u\rangle = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}(|r\rangle + |l\rangle) \\ |d\rangle = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}(|r\rangle - |l\rangle) \end{cases}$$

Let's now rewrite  $T_3$  in the  $|r\rangle, |l\rangle$  basis:

$$\begin{aligned} |T_3\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|u\rangle \otimes |u\rangle - |d\rangle \otimes |d\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{2}{4}(|r\rangle + |l\rangle)(|r\rangle + |l\rangle) - \frac{2}{4}(|r\rangle - |l\rangle)(|r\rangle - |l\rangle) \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}(|rr\rangle + |rl\rangle + |lr\rangle + |ll\rangle - (|rr\rangle - |rl\rangle - |lr\rangle + |ll\rangle)) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|rl\rangle + |lr\rangle) \end{aligned}$$

And indeed, as expected,  $T_3$  is built from two spins such that when one is left, the other is right. Let's do another one to be sure: consider  $T_2$  on the  $x$ -axis: this gives us a  $+1$ , so we expect a normalized linear combination of  $|rr\rangle$  and  $|ll\rangle$ .

$$\begin{aligned} |T_2\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|u\rangle \otimes |u\rangle + |d\rangle \otimes |d\rangle) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \frac{2}{4}(|r\rangle + |l\rangle)(|r\rangle + |l\rangle) + \frac{2}{4}(|r\rangle - |l\rangle)(|r\rangle - |l\rangle) \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}(|rr\rangle + |rl\rangle + |lr\rangle + |ll\rangle + (|rr\rangle - |rl\rangle - |lr\rangle + |ll\rangle)) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|rr\rangle + |ll\rangle) \end{aligned}$$

**Exercise 27.** Prove that the four vectors  $|\text{sing}\rangle, |T_1\rangle, |T_2\rangle$ , and  $|T_3\rangle$  are eigenvectors of  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau}$ . What are their eigenvalues?

Recall the definition of those four vectors:

$$\begin{aligned} |\text{sing}\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|ud\rangle - |du\rangle); & |T_1\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\ |T_2\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle); & |T_3\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \end{aligned}$$

And the definition of  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau}$ :

$$\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau} = \sigma_x \tau_x + \sigma_y \tau_y + \sigma_z \tau_z$$

Again for this exercise, we won't need to explicitly use the Pauli matrices  $\sigma_i/\tau_j$ . But actually, we won't even need the multiplication table either, as we've already done most of the work in earlier exercises. Indeed, if we want to prove that  $|\Psi\rangle$  is an eigenvector for  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau}$ , we expect to be able to carry some computation following this pattern:

$$\begin{aligned}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|\Psi\rangle &= (\sigma_x\tau_x + \sigma_y\tau_y + \sigma_z\tau_z)|\Psi\rangle \\ &= (\sigma_x\tau_x)|\Psi\rangle + (\sigma_y\tau_y)|\Psi\rangle + (\sigma_z\tau_z)|\Psi\rangle \\ &= \dots \\ &= \lambda_\Psi|\Psi\rangle\end{aligned}$$

But we know from the book that:

$$\sigma_x\tau_x|\text{sing}\rangle = \sigma_y\tau_y|\text{sing}\rangle = \sigma_z\tau_z|\text{sing}\rangle = -|\text{sing}\rangle$$

From L06E07 that

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_x\tau_x|T_1\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|du\rangle + |ud\rangle) &=: T_1; \\ \sigma_y\tau_y|T_1\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|du\rangle + |ud\rangle) &=: T_1; \\ \sigma_z\tau_z|T_1\rangle &= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|du\rangle + |ud\rangle) &=: -T_1;\end{aligned}$$

And from L06E08 that:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_x\tau_x|T_2\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) &=: T_2; & \sigma_x\tau_x|T_3\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|dd\rangle - |uu\rangle) &=: -T_3; \\ \sigma_y\tau_y|T_2\rangle &= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) &=: -T_2; & \sigma_y\tau_y|T_3\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) &=: T_3; \\ \sigma_z\tau_z|T_2\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) &=: T_2; & \sigma_z\tau_z|T_3\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) &=: T_3.\end{aligned}$$

It follows that:

$$\begin{aligned}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|\text{sing}\rangle &= \sigma_x\tau_x|\text{sing}\rangle + (\sigma_y\tau_y)|\text{sing}\rangle + (\sigma_z\tau_z)|\text{sing}\rangle &= \boxed{-3}|\text{sing}\rangle \\ (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|T_1\rangle &= \sigma_x\tau_x|T_1\rangle + (\sigma_y\tau_y)|T_1\rangle + (\sigma_z\tau_z)|T_1\rangle &= \boxed{+1}|T_1\rangle \\ (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|T_2\rangle &= \sigma_x\tau_x|T_2\rangle + (\sigma_y\tau_y)|T_2\rangle + (\sigma_z\tau_z)|T_2\rangle &= \boxed{+1}|T_2\rangle \\ (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|T_3\rangle &= \sigma_x\tau_x|T_3\rangle + (\sigma_y\tau_y)|T_3\rangle + (\sigma_z\tau_z)|T_3\rangle &= \boxed{+1}|T_3\rangle\end{aligned}$$

Hence, as foretold by the authors after this exercise, the triplets share a degenerate eigenvalue (+1), while the singlet is associated to a unique eigenvalue (-3), which justifies *a posteriori* their names.

**Exercise 28.** *A system of two spins has the Hamiltonian*

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\omega}{2} \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau}$$

*What are the possible energies of the system, and what are the eigenvectors of the Hamiltonian?*

*Suppose the system starts in the state  $|uu\rangle$ . What is the state at any later time? Answer the same question for initial states  $|ud\rangle$ ,  $|du\rangle$ , and  $|dd\rangle$ .*

The first part of the question essentially is about diagonalizing the Hamiltonian: the eigenvalues correspond to the measurable values for the energy. More generally, the exercise is about repeating what we've done earlier in chapter 4, in particular in exercise L04E06, meaning, applying what the authors call the *recipe for a Schrödinger Ket* (section 4.13):

1. Derive, look up, guess, borrow, or steal the Hamiltonian operator  $H$ ;
2. Prepare an initial state  $|\Psi(0)\rangle$ ;
3. Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of  $H$  by solving the time-independent Schrödinger equation,

$$H|E_j\rangle = E_j|E_j\rangle$$



4. Use the initial state-vector  $|\Psi(0)\rangle$ , along with the eigenvectors  $|E_j\rangle$  from step 3, to calculate the initial coefficients  $\alpha_j(0)$ :

$$\alpha_j(0) = \langle E_j | \Psi(0) \rangle$$

5. Rewrite  $|\Psi(0)\rangle$  in terms of the eigenvectors  $|E_j\rangle$  and the initial coefficients  $\alpha_j(0)$ :

$$|\Psi(0)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) |E_j\rangle$$

6. In the above equation, replace each  $\alpha_j(0)$  with  $\alpha_j(t)$  to capture its time-dependence. As a result,  $|\Psi(0)\rangle$  becomes  $|\Psi(t)\rangle$ :

$$|\Psi(t)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(t) |E_j\rangle$$

7. Using Eq. 4.30<sup>37</sup>, replace each  $\alpha_j(t)$  with  $\alpha_j(0) \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_j t)$ :

$$|\Psi(t)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_j t) |E_j\rangle$$

We'll start by diagonalizing  $\mathbf{H}$ , and then, by loosely applying the rest of the procedure with the various proposed initial states. Recall from the previous exercise that we've found 4 eigenvectors for  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|\text{sing}\rangle &= -3|\text{sing}\rangle \\ (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|T_1\rangle &= +1|T_1\rangle \\ (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|T_2\rangle &= +1|T_2\rangle \\ (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau})|T_3\rangle &= +1|T_3\rangle \end{aligned}$$

Let's recall the expression of those 4 vectors in the up/down basis:

$$\begin{aligned} |\text{sing}\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|ud\rangle - |du\rangle); & |T_1\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|ud\rangle + |du\rangle) \\ |T_2\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle); & |T_3\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|uu\rangle - |dd\rangle) \end{aligned}$$

It is immediate to check that those eigenvectors all have norm 1, and that they are orthogonal pairwise<sup>38</sup>.

Furthermore, we know that  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau}$  is an operator in a 4 dimensional vector space  $A \otimes B$ <sup>39</sup>. And we know from the spectral theorem (aka, the fundamental theorem, proved in L03E01) that the eigenvectors of a Hermitian operator (i.e. an observable) make an orthonormal basis for the surrounding vector space.

Hence we can conclude that our 4 eigenvectors  $|\text{sing}\rangle$ ,  $|T_1\rangle$ ,  $|T_2\rangle$ , and  $|T_3\rangle$  are *the* eigenvectors of  $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau}$ : there are no others, for we've reached the dimension of our vector space  $A \otimes B$ . By scaling our operator by  $\omega/2$ , we find back our Hamiltonian  $\mathbf{H}$ , for which we then have the same eigenvectors, only the eigenvalues now need to be shifted likewise:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}|\text{sing}\rangle &= \frac{-3\omega}{2}|\text{sing}\rangle; & \mathbf{H}|T_1\rangle &= \frac{+\omega}{2}|T_1\rangle \\ \mathbf{H}|T_2\rangle &= \frac{+\omega}{2}|T_2\rangle; & \mathbf{H}|T_3\rangle &= \frac{+\omega}{2}|T_3\rangle \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we can only measure two values for the energy:

$$\boxed{E_{\text{sing}} = \frac{-3\omega}{2}; \quad E_{T_1} = E_{T_2} = E_{T_3} = \frac{+\omega}{2}}$$

<sup>37</sup>This equation corresponds exactly to what this step describes

<sup>38</sup>If unsure, compute respectively the norm, which is derived from the inner-product:  $\|\Psi\| := \sqrt{\langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle}$ , and that the same inner-product between two vectors is zero iff said vectors are orthogonal

<sup>39</sup>If this is unclear, you can refer to the beginning on this Chapter (6), where we explore how the combine vector space was built

And our eigenvectors are:

$$\boxed{|\text{sing}\rangle, \quad |T_1\rangle, \quad |T_2\rangle, \quad |T_3\rangle}$$


---

At this point, we've reached the end of step 3. of the *recipe for a Schrödinger cat* recalled earlier. We're now ready to follow through the other steps, by varying the initial state. Let's start as suggested with  $|\Psi_{uu}(0)\rangle = |uu\rangle$ : we're trying to rewrite this initial vector state in the basis corresponding to the eigenvectors of our observable (our Hamiltonian).

To this effect, we start by computing the coefficient  $\alpha_j(0)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{\text{sing}}(0) &:= \langle \text{sing} | \Psi_{uu}(0) \rangle & \alpha_{T_1}(0) &:= \langle T_1 | \Psi_{uu}(0) \rangle \\ &= \langle \text{sing} | uu \rangle & &= \langle T_1 | uu \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle ud | - \langle du |) | uu \rangle & &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle ud | + \langle du |) | uu \rangle \\ &= \boxed{0} & &= \boxed{0} \\ \\ \alpha_{T_2}(0) &:= \langle T_2 | \Psi_{uu}(0) \rangle & \alpha_{T_3}(0) &:= \langle T_3 | \Psi_{uu}(0) \rangle \\ &= \langle T_2 | uu \rangle & &= \langle T_3 | uu \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle uu | + \langle dd |) | uu \rangle & &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle uu | - \langle dd |) | uu \rangle \\ &= \boxed{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} & &= \boxed{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} \end{aligned}$$

Hence we can rewrite (step 5.)  $|\Psi_{uu}(0)\rangle = |uu\rangle$  in the eigenbase:

$$|\Psi_{uu}(0)\rangle = |uu\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) |E_j\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|T_2\rangle + |T_3\rangle)$$

And from a previous equation (4.30) we can find the evolution over time of our state:

$$|\Psi_{uu}(t)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_j t) |E_j\rangle$$

That is:

$$\boxed{|\Psi_{uu}(t)\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \exp(-\frac{\omega i}{2\hbar} t) (|T_2\rangle + |T_3\rangle)}$$


---

Let's repeat the exact same process, but this time with an initial state  $|\Psi_{ud}(0)\rangle = |ud\rangle$ . I'll just perform the computation, you can refer to the previous steps if need be.

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{\text{sing}}(0) &:= \langle \text{sing} | \Psi_{ud}(0) \rangle & \alpha_{T_1}(0) &:= \langle T_1 | \Psi_{ud}(0) \rangle \\ &= \langle \text{sing} | ud \rangle & &= \langle T_1 | ud \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle ud | - \langle du |) | ud \rangle & &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle ud | + \langle du |) | ud \rangle \\ &= \boxed{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} & &= \boxed{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} \\ \\ \alpha_{T_2}(0) &:= \langle T_2 | \Psi_{ud}(0) \rangle & \alpha_{T_3}(0) &:= \langle T_3 | \Psi_{ud}(0) \rangle \\ &= \langle T_2 | ud \rangle & &= \langle T_3 | ud \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle uu | + \langle dd |) | ud \rangle & &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\langle uu | - \langle dd |) | ud \rangle \\ &= \boxed{0} & &= \boxed{0} \end{aligned}$$

But:

$$|\Psi_{ud}(t)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_j t) |E_j\rangle$$

So:

$$|\Psi_{ud}(t)\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \exp(\frac{3\omega i}{2\hbar} t) |\text{sing}\rangle + \exp(-\frac{\omega i}{2\hbar} t) |T_1\rangle \right)$$


---

Let's do it more time, with an initial state of  $|\Psi_{du}(0)\rangle = |du\rangle$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{\text{sing}}(0) &:= \langle \text{sing} | \Psi_{du}(0) \rangle & \alpha_{T_1}(0) &:= \langle T_1 | \Psi_{du}(0) \rangle \\ &= \langle \text{sing} | du \rangle & &= \langle T_1 | du \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\langle ud | - \langle du |) | du \rangle & &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\langle ud | + \langle du |) | du \rangle \\ &= \boxed{-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} & &= \boxed{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} \\ \alpha_{T_2}(0) &:= \langle T_2 | \Psi_{du}(0) \rangle & \alpha_{T_3}(0) &:= \langle T_3 | \Psi_{du}(0) \rangle \\ &= \langle T_2 | du \rangle & &= \langle T_3 | du \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\langle uu | + \langle dd |) | du \rangle & &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\langle uu | - \langle dd |) | du \rangle \\ &= \boxed{0} & &= \boxed{0} \end{aligned}$$

But:

$$|\Psi_{du}(t)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_j t) |E_j\rangle$$

So:

$$|\Psi_{du}(t)\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left( \exp(-\frac{\omega i}{2\hbar} t) |T_1\rangle - \exp(\frac{3\omega i}{2\hbar} t) |\text{sing}\rangle \right)$$


---

One last time, starting from  $|\Psi_{dd}(0)\rangle = |dd\rangle$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_{\text{sing}}(0) &:= \langle \text{sing} | \Psi_{dd}(0) \rangle & \alpha_{T_1}(0) &:= \langle T_1 | \Psi_{dd}(0) \rangle \\ &= \langle \text{sing} | dd \rangle & &= \langle T_1 | dd \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\langle ud | - \langle du |) | dd \rangle & &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\langle ud | + \langle du |) | dd \rangle \\ &= \boxed{0} & &= \boxed{0} \\ \alpha_{T_2}(0) &:= \langle T_2 | \Psi_{dd}(0) \rangle & \alpha_{T_3}(0) &:= \langle T_3 | \Psi_{dd}(0) \rangle \\ &= \langle T_2 | dd \rangle & &= \langle T_3 | dd \rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\langle uu | + \langle dd |) | dd \rangle & &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (\langle uu | - \langle dd |) | dd \rangle \\ &= \boxed{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} & &= \boxed{-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} \end{aligned}$$

But:

$$|\Psi_{dd}(t)\rangle = \sum_j \alpha_j(0) \exp(-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_j t) |E_j\rangle$$

So:

$$|\Psi_{dd}(t)\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \exp(-\frac{\omega i}{\hbar} t) (|T_2\rangle - |T_3\rangle)$$

## 7 More on Entanglement

### 7.1 Mathematical Interlude: Tensor Products in Component Form

#### 7.1.1 Building Tensor Product Matrices from Basic Principles

#### 7.1.2 Building Tensor Product Matrices from Component Matrices

**Exercise 29.** Write the tensor product  $I \otimes \tau_x$  as a matrix, and apply that matrix to each of the  $|uu\rangle$ ,  $|ud\rangle$ ,  $|du\rangle$ , and  $|dd\rangle$  column vectors. Show that Alice's half of the state-vector is unchanged in each case. Recall that  $I$  is the  $2 \times 2$  unit matrix.

Recall that  $\tau_x$  is a Pauli matrix, while  $I$  really is the identity matrix:

$$\tau_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

We saw two different ways of building  $I \otimes \tau_x$ . Let's start with the first one: consider the usual ordered basis of the underlying composite space:  $\{|uu\rangle, |ud\rangle, |du\rangle, |dd\rangle\}$ . Then, the elements of the matrix representation of  $I \otimes \tau_x$  in this basis are given by:

$$(I \otimes \tau_x)_{ab,cd} = \langle ab | (I \otimes \tau_x) | cd \rangle$$

We can then use the multiplication table from either the appendix or from L06E04, where, remember,  $\tau_x$  in this multiplication table was a shortcut notation for  $I \otimes \tau_x$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \tau_x |uu\rangle &= |ud\rangle; & \tau_x |ud\rangle &= |uu\rangle \\ \tau_x |du\rangle &= |dd\rangle; & \tau_x |dd\rangle &= |du\rangle \end{aligned}$$

And we're now ready to evaluate the operator's matrix form:

$$\begin{aligned} I \otimes \tau_x &= \begin{pmatrix} \langle uu | (I \otimes \tau_x) | uu \rangle & \langle uu | (I \otimes \tau_x) | ud \rangle & \langle uu | (I \otimes \tau_x) | du \rangle & \langle uu | (I \otimes \tau_x) | dd \rangle \\ \langle ud | (I \otimes \tau_x) | uu \rangle & \langle ud | (I \otimes \tau_x) | ud \rangle & \langle ud | (I \otimes \tau_x) | du \rangle & \langle ud | (I \otimes \tau_x) | dd \rangle \\ \langle du | (I \otimes \tau_x) | uu \rangle & \langle du | (I \otimes \tau_x) | ud \rangle & \langle du | (I \otimes \tau_x) | du \rangle & \langle du | (I \otimes \tau_x) | dd \rangle \\ \langle dd | (I \otimes \tau_x) | uu \rangle & \langle dd | (I \otimes \tau_x) | ud \rangle & \langle dd | (I \otimes \tau_x) | du \rangle & \langle dd | (I \otimes \tau_x) | dd \rangle \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \langle uu | ud \rangle & \langle uu | uu \rangle & \langle uu | dd \rangle & \langle uu | du \rangle \\ \langle ud | ud \rangle & \langle ud | uu \rangle & \langle ud | dd \rangle & \langle ud | du \rangle \\ \langle du | ud \rangle & \langle du | uu \rangle & \langle du | dd \rangle & \langle du | du \rangle \\ \langle dd | ud \rangle & \langle dd | uu \rangle & \langle dd | dd \rangle & \langle dd | du \rangle \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}} \end{aligned}$$

Let's move on to the second way, which consists in using Eq. 7.6 of the book:

$$A \otimes B = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}B & A_{12}B \\ A_{21}B & A_{22}B \end{pmatrix}$$

Which then yields:

$$\begin{aligned} I \otimes \tau_x &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \times \tau_x & 0 \times \tau_x \\ 0 \times \tau_x & 1 \times \tau_x \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}} \end{aligned}$$

Which is exactly what we've found earlier, albeit less tediously.

---

In our usual ordered basis  $\{|uu\rangle, |ud\rangle, |du\rangle, |dd\rangle\}$ , the column representations of the basis vectors are as follow:

$$|uu\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad |ud\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad |du\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad |dd\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Remark 17.** Remember than the column notation is merely a syntactical shortcut over linear combinations of the basis vectors:

$$\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \\ d \end{pmatrix} := a|uu\rangle + b|ud\rangle + c|du\rangle + d|dd\rangle$$

**Remark 18.** Note that we could also have used, as the authors did in the book, Eq. 7.6 to derive them.

Then it's just a matter of computing some elementary matrix $\times$ vector products. As a shortcut, one can also recall from one's linear algebra class than such products, when they involve basis vectors, are simply a matter of extracting the columns of the matrix (which is fairly trivial to see):

$$\begin{aligned} (I \otimes \tau_x)|uu\rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = |ud\rangle; & (I \otimes \tau_x)|ud\rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = |uu\rangle; \\ (I \otimes \tau_x)|du\rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = |dd\rangle; & (I \otimes \tau_x)|dd\rangle &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = |du\rangle \end{aligned}$$

**Remark 19.** Naturally, this is consistent with the multiplication table we've recalled earlier; and Alice's part of the state is indeed kept unchanged, as expected.

**Exercise 30.** Calculate the matrix elements of  $\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x$  by forming inner products as we did in Eq. 7.2.

This is essentially the same exercise as the previous one, but with a different composite operator. To check for errors, I'll still do the computation using the two approaches.

We'll start with the approach suggested in the exercise's statement: let's first start by recalling the portion of interest from the multiplication table computed in L06E04:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_z|uu\rangle &= |uu\rangle; & \tau_x|uu\rangle &= |ud\rangle \\ \sigma_z|ud\rangle &= |ud\rangle; & \tau_x|ud\rangle &= |uu\rangle \\ \sigma_z|du\rangle &= -|du\rangle; & \tau_x|du\rangle &= |dd\rangle \\ \sigma_z|dd\rangle &= -|dd\rangle; & \tau_x|dd\rangle &= |du\rangle \end{aligned}$$

Then, Eq. 7.2 applied to  $\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x$  will give:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x &= \begin{pmatrix} \langle uu | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | uu \rangle & \langle uu | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | ud \rangle & \langle uu | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | du \rangle & \langle uu | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | dd \rangle \\ \langle ud | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | uu \rangle & \langle ud | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | ud \rangle & \langle ud | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | du \rangle & \langle ud | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | dd \rangle \\ \langle du | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | uu \rangle & \langle du | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | ud \rangle & \langle du | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | du \rangle & \langle du | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | dd \rangle \\ \langle dd | (I \otimes \tau_x) | uu \rangle & \langle dd | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | ud \rangle & \langle dd | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | du \rangle & \langle dd | (\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x) | dd \rangle \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \langle uu | \sigma_z | ud \rangle & \langle uu | \sigma_z | uu \rangle & \langle uu | \sigma_z | dd \rangle & \langle uu | \sigma_z | du \rangle \\ \langle ud | \sigma_z | ud \rangle & \langle ud | \sigma_z | uu \rangle & \langle ud | \sigma_z | dd \rangle & \langle ud | \sigma_z | du \rangle \\ \langle du | \sigma_z | ud \rangle & \langle du | \sigma_z | uu \rangle & \langle du | \sigma_z | dd \rangle & \langle du | \sigma_z | du \rangle \\ \langle dd | \sigma_z | ud \rangle & \langle dd | \sigma_z | uu \rangle & \langle dd | \sigma_z | dd \rangle & \langle dd | \sigma_z | du \rangle \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \langle uu | ud \rangle & \langle uu | uu \rangle & -\langle uu | dd \rangle & -\langle uu | du \rangle \\ \langle ud | ud \rangle & \langle ud | uu \rangle & -\langle ud | dd \rangle & -\langle ud | du \rangle \\ \langle du | ud \rangle & \langle du | uu \rangle & -\langle du | dd \rangle & -\langle du | du \rangle \\ \langle dd | ud \rangle & \langle dd | uu \rangle & -\langle dd | dd \rangle & -\langle dd | du \rangle \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$


---

Let's verify our computation using the second approach, relying on Eq. 7.6 of the book:

$$A \otimes B = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}B & A_{12}B \\ A_{21}B & A_{22}B \end{pmatrix}$$

Recall the Pauli matrices:

$$\sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tau_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Which then yields:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_z \otimes \tau_x &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \times \tau_x & 0 \times \tau_x \\ 0 \times \tau_x & -1 \times \tau_x \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Which agrees with our previous result.

**Exercise 31.** a) Rewrite Eq. 7.10 in component form, replacing the symbols  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $a$ , and  $b$  with the matrices and column vectors from Eqs. 7.7 and 7.8.

b) Perform the matrix multiplications  $Aa$  and  $Bb$  on the right-hand side. Verify that each result is a  $4 \times 1$  matrix.

c) Expand all three Kronecker products.

d) Verify the row and column sizes of each Kronecker product:

- $A \otimes B : 4 \times 4$
- $a \otimes b : 4 \times 1$
- $Aa \otimes Bb : 4 \times 1$

e) Perform the matrix multiplication on the left-hand side, resulting in a  $4 \times 1$  column vector. Each row should be the sum of four separate terms.

f) Finally, verify that the resulting column vectors on the left and right sides are identical.

Recall Eq. 7.10

$$(A \otimes B)(a \otimes b) = (Aa \otimes Bb)$$

And Eq. 7.7 and 7.8:

$$A \otimes B = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}B_{11} & A_{11}B_{12} & A_{12}B_{11} & A_{12}B_{12} \\ A_{11}B_{21} & A_{11}B_{22} & A_{12}B_{21} & A_{12}B_{22} \\ A_{21}B_{11} & A_{21}B_{12} & A_{22}B_{11} & A_{22}B_{12} \\ A_{21}B_{21} & A_{21}B_{22} & A_{22}B_{21} & A_{22}B_{22} \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} b_{11} \\ b_{21} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}b_{11} \\ a_{11}b_{21} \\ a_{21}b_{11} \\ a_{21}b_{21} \end{pmatrix}$$

Our goal is to prove Eq. 7.10 by following all the recommended steps. It's a bit tedious, but otherwise presents no major difficulties.

---

a) Let's rewrite the equation (that's still to be proved) in component form:

$$(A \otimes B)(a \otimes b) = (Aa \otimes Bb)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \left( \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} \end{pmatrix} \right) \left( \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} b_{11} \\ b_{21} \end{pmatrix} \right) = \left( \left( \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \end{pmatrix} \right) \otimes \left( \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b_{11} \\ b_{21} \end{pmatrix} \right) \right)$$


---

b) Let's expand  $Aa$  and  $Bb$ :

$$Aa = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}a_{11} + A_{12}a_{21} \\ A_{21}a_{11} + A_{22}a_{21} \end{pmatrix}; \quad Bb = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b_{11} \\ b_{21} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11}b_{11} + B_{12}b_{21} \\ B_{21}b_{11} + B_{22}b_{21} \end{pmatrix};$$

From Eqs. 7.7 and 7.8, we can see that all Kronecker products indeed expand to  $4 \times 1$  matrices. Equation 7.10 is then equivalent to:

$$\left( \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} \end{pmatrix} \right) \left( \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} b_{11} \\ b_{21} \end{pmatrix} \right) = \left( \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}a_{11} + A_{12}a_{21} \\ A_{21}a_{11} + A_{22}a_{21} \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} B_{11}b_{11} + B_{12}b_{21} \\ B_{21}b_{11} + B_{22}b_{21} \end{pmatrix} \right)$$


---

c), d), e), f) I'll be mixing all those steps together, because this is fairly trivial. First,  $A \otimes B$  and  $a \otimes b$  are respectively Eqs. 7.7 and 7.8. This gives us already:

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_{11}B_{11} & A_{11}B_{12} & A_{12}B_{11} & A_{12}B_{12} \\ A_{11}B_{21} & A_{11}B_{22} & A_{12}B_{21} & A_{12}B_{22} \\ A_{21}B_{11} & A_{21}B_{12} & A_{22}B_{11} & A_{22}B_{12} \\ A_{21}B_{21} & A_{21}B_{22} & A_{22}B_{21} & A_{22}B_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}b_{11} \\ a_{11}b_{21} \\ a_{21}b_{11} \\ a_{21}b_{21} \end{pmatrix} = \left( \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}a_{11} + A_{12}a_{21} \\ A_{21}a_{11} + A_{22}a_{21} \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} B_{11}b_{11} + B_{12}b_{21} \\ B_{21}b_{11} + B_{22}b_{21} \end{pmatrix} \right)$$

It remains to expand the last Kronecker product, for which we can use 7.8:

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}B_{11} & A_{11}B_{12} & A_{12}B_{11} & A_{12}B_{12} \\ A_{11}B_{21} & A_{11}B_{22} & A_{12}B_{21} & A_{12}B_{22} \\ A_{21}B_{11} & A_{21}B_{12} & A_{22}B_{11} & A_{22}B_{12} \\ A_{21}B_{21} & A_{21}B_{22} & A_{22}B_{21} & A_{22}B_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}b_{11} \\ a_{11}b_{21} \\ a_{21}b_{11} \\ a_{21}b_{21} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} (A_{11}a_{11} + A_{12}a_{21})(B_{11}b_{11} + B_{12}b_{21}) \\ (A_{11}a_{11} + A_{12}a_{21})(B_{21}b_{11} + B_{22}b_{21}) \\ (A_{21}a_{11} + A_{22}a_{21})(B_{11}b_{11} + B_{12}b_{21}) \\ (A_{21}a_{11} + A_{22}a_{21})(B_{21}b_{11} + B_{22}b_{21}) \end{pmatrix} \\ & = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}B_{11}a_{11}b_{11} + A_{11}B_{12}a_{11}b_{21} + A_{12}B_{11}a_{21}b_{11} + A_{12}B_{12}a_{21}b_{21} \\ A_{11}B_{21}a_{11}b_{11} + A_{11}B_{22}a_{11}b_{21} + A_{12}B_{21}a_{21}b_{11} + A_{12}B_{22}a_{21}b_{21} \\ A_{21}B_{11}a_{11}b_{11} + A_{21}B_{12}a_{11}b_{21} + A_{22}B_{11}a_{21}b_{11} + A_{22}B_{12}a_{21}b_{21} \\ A_{21}B_{21}a_{11}b_{11} + A_{21}B_{22}a_{11}b_{21} + A_{22}B_{21}a_{21}b_{11} + A_{22}B_{22}a_{21}b_{21} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

And it's now trivial to verify that this holds, as expected.  $\square$

## 7.2 Mathematical Interlude: Outer Products

## 7.3 Density Matrices: A New Tool

## 7.4 Entanglement and Density Matrices

## 7.5 Entanglement for Two Spins

**Exercise 32.** Calculate the density matrix for:

$$|\Psi\rangle = \alpha|u\rangle + \beta|d\rangle$$

Answer:

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(u) &= \alpha; & \psi^*(u) &= \alpha^* \\ \psi(d) &= \beta; & \psi^*(d) &= \beta^*\end{aligned}$$

$$\rho_{a'a} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha^*\alpha & \alpha^*\beta \\ \beta^*\alpha & \beta^*\beta \end{pmatrix}$$

Now try plugging in some numbers for  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . Make sure they are normalized to 1. For example,  $\alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \beta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ .

Start by recalling the definition of the density matrix for a single spin in a known state:

$$\rho_{aa'} = \psi^*(a')\psi(a)$$

Now we have no wave function  $\psi$  in the exercise statement (the answer set aside), but we can find it by identification with general form of  $|\Psi\rangle$ :

$$|\Psi\rangle = \sum_{a,b,c,\dots} \psi(a,b,c,\dots)|a,b,c,\dots\rangle$$

Hence,  $\psi(u)$  is the component of  $|\Psi\rangle$  following the  $|u\rangle$  axis, and  $\psi(d)$  the one on the  $|d\rangle$  axis:

$$\psi(u) = \langle u|\Psi\rangle = \alpha; \quad \psi(d) = \langle d|\Psi\rangle = \beta;$$

Immediately:

$$\psi^*(u) = \alpha^*; \quad \psi^*(d) = \beta^*;$$

Then it's just about packaging all the  $\rho_{aa'}$  in a matrix: the basis is ordered ( $\{|u\rangle, |d\rangle\}$ ) hence:

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} \rho_{uu} & \rho_{ud} \\ \rho_{du} & \rho_{dd} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \psi^*(u)\psi(u) & \psi^*(d)\psi(u) \\ \psi^*(u)\psi(d) & \psi^*(d)\psi(d) \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} \alpha^*\alpha & \beta^*\alpha \\ \alpha^*\beta & \beta^*\beta \end{pmatrix}}$$

**Remark 20.** We could also use the fact that the density operator is defined as a linear combination of projectors corresponding to the potential states of the system, each scaled by a probability, and so that the sum of those probabilities is 1, e.g.:

$$\rho = \sum_i P_i |\psi_i\rangle\langle\psi_i|; \quad \text{where: } \sum_i P_i = 1$$

As we're in the case of a single spin in a known state  $|\Psi\rangle$ , this reduces to

$$\rho = 1|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi| = |\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$$

Assuming again the ordered basis  $\{|u\rangle, |d\rangle\}$ , we can write  $\langle\Psi|$  and  $|\Psi\rangle$  in column form, and perform the outer-product:

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha^* & \beta^* \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha\alpha^* & \alpha\beta^* \\ \beta\alpha^* & \beta\beta^* \end{pmatrix}$$

This allows us to double-check our previous result: it seems there's a typo in the exercise statement.



Let's compute a few density matrices for well-known states:

$$\begin{aligned}
|u\rangle &= 1|u\rangle + 0|d\rangle \Rightarrow \rho_{|u\rangle} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
|d\rangle &= 0|u\rangle + 1|d\rangle \Rightarrow \rho_{|d\rangle} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
|r\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \Rightarrow \rho_{|r\rangle} = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix} \\
|l\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \Rightarrow \rho_{|l\rangle} = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & -1/2 \\ -1/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix} \\
|i\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \Rightarrow \rho_{|i\rangle} = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & -i/2 \\ i/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix} \\
|o\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}|u\rangle - \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}|d\rangle \Rightarrow \rho_{|o\rangle} = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & i/2 \\ -i/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$


---

The French version of this exercise<sup>40</sup> is a bit more interesting, there are a few additional questions. We can for instance check that  $\rho$  is Hermitian:

$$\rho^\dagger = (\rho^*)^T = \begin{pmatrix} (\alpha^*\alpha)^* & (\beta^*\alpha)^* \\ (\alpha^*\beta)^* & (\beta^*\beta)^* \end{pmatrix}^T = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha\alpha^* & \beta\alpha^* \\ \alpha\beta^* & \beta\beta^* \end{pmatrix}^T = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha^*\alpha & \beta^*\alpha \\ \alpha^*\beta & \beta^*\beta \end{pmatrix} =: \rho \quad \square$$

Or that its trace is 1, because of the normalization condition on  $|\Psi\rangle$ :

$$\text{Tr}(\rho) = \alpha^*\alpha + \beta^*\beta = 1 \quad \square$$

Finally, we can check that  $\rho$  projects to  $|\Psi\rangle$ . Consider a vector which has a component perpendicular to  $|\Psi\rangle$ , that is, in the direction of  $|\Psi^\perp\rangle$ , and a component in the direction of  $|\Psi\rangle$

$$|\Phi\rangle = \gamma|\Psi^\perp\rangle + \delta|\Psi\rangle$$

By linearity:

$$\rho|\Phi\rangle = \gamma\rho|\Psi^\perp\rangle + \delta\rho|\Psi\rangle$$

Using the fact that  $\rho = |\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$ , we see, by associativity on the products, and by the orthogonality condition between  $|\Psi\rangle$  and  $|\Psi^\perp\rangle$ :

$$\rho|\Psi^\perp\rangle = (|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|)|\Psi^\perp\rangle = |\Psi\rangle(\underbrace{\langle\Psi|\Psi^\perp\rangle}_{=0}) = 0$$

On the other hand, by the normalization condition on  $|\Psi\rangle$ :

$$\rho|\Psi\rangle = (|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|)|\Psi\rangle = |\Psi\rangle(\underbrace{\langle\Psi|\Psi\rangle}_{=1}) = |\Psi\rangle$$

By injecting the two previous results in the one before, it follows that indeed that  $\rho$  projects a vector on the  $|\Psi\rangle$  direction:

$$\rho|\Phi\rangle = \delta|\Psi\rangle$$

**Exercise 33.** a) Show that

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} a^2 & 0 \\ 0 & b^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

b) Now, suppose

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} 1/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 2/3 \end{pmatrix}$$

---

<sup>40</sup>See <https://leminimumtheorique.jimdo.free.com/le%C3%A7on-7/exercice-7-4/> for a relevant excerpt, which by the way seems to confirm the typo hypothesis.

Calculate

$$\begin{aligned} &\rho^2 \\ &\text{Tr}(\rho) \\ &\text{Tr}(\rho^2) \end{aligned}$$

c) If  $\rho$  is a density matrix, does it represent a pure state or a mixed state?

The exercise is fairly trivial.

a)

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} a^2 & 0 \\ 0 & b^2 \end{pmatrix}} \quad \square$$

b) By application of the previous result,

$$\rho^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 2/3 \end{pmatrix}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} (1/3)^2 & 0 \\ 0 & (2/3)^2 \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 1/9 & 0 \\ 0 & 4/9 \end{pmatrix}}$$

Recall that there's a result alluded to by the authors in a footnote page 195 (section 7.2) that the trace of an operator is the sum of the diagonal elements of any matrix representation of this operator. Hence:

$$\text{Tr}(\rho) = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{3} = \boxed{1}; \quad \text{Tr}(\rho^2) = \frac{1}{9} + \frac{4}{9} = \boxed{\frac{5}{9}}$$

c) We just saw in the book some properties of density matrices. In particular, for a pure state, and a density matrix  $\rho$ , we *must* have:

$$\rho^2 = \rho \text{ and } \text{Tr}(\rho)^2 = 1$$

While for a mixed state, we *must* have:

$$\rho^2 \neq \rho \text{ and } \text{Tr}(\rho)^2 < 1$$

Clearly, in our case,  $\boxed{\rho \text{ represents a mixed state.}}$

**Exercise 34.** Use Eq. 7.22 to show that if  $\rho$  is a density matrix, then

$$\text{Tr}(\rho) = 1.$$

Eq. 7.22 is the following:

$$P(a) = \rho_{aa}$$

Where  $P(a)$  is the probability for an observable  $L$  tied to Alice's state space, extended to act on a composite state-space made from Alice's and Bob's, to be measured with the eigenvalue  $a$ . On the other hand,  $\rho_{aa}$  corresponds to the diagonal elements of Alice's density matrix, expressed in Alice state space.

Well, there will be one  $P(a)$  for each eigenvalue, and thus by Eq. 7.22, there is a systematic correspondence with the diagonal elements of the density matrix. But the trace of an operator is defined as the sum of the diagonal elements of a matrix representation of this operator, and it so happens that this value is unique up to a change of basis (meaning, the trace of an operator is the same for all matrix representation of this operator).

Hence because the eigenvalues  $a$  represent all the potential measurement values, we know that  $\sum_a P(a) = 1$ , which by our previous reasoning implies indeed that

$$\boxed{\text{Tr}(\rho) := \sum_a \rho_{aa} = \sum_a P(a) = 1} \quad \square$$

## 7.6 A Concrete Example: Calculating Alice's Density Matrix

**Exercise 35.** Use Eq. 7.24 to calculate  $\rho^2$ . How does this result confirm that  $\rho$  represents an entangled state? We'll soon discover that there are other ways to check for entanglement.

Here's Eq. 7.24:

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix}$$

From there it's trivial to see that:

$$\rho^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1/4 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/4 \end{pmatrix}$$

The authors demonstrated earlier a criteria to determine whether a density matrix corresponds to an entangled state or not, at the end of section 7.5: for a pure state, and a density matrix  $\rho$ , we *must* have:

$$\rho^2 = \rho \text{ and } \text{Tr}(\rho)^2 = 1$$

While for a mixed or entangled state, we *must* have:

$$\rho^2 \neq \rho \text{ and } \text{Tr}(\rho)^2 < 1$$

Hence,  $\rho$  represents an entangled state.

**Exercise 36.** Consider the following states

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi_1\rangle &= \frac{1}{2} (|uu\rangle + |ud\rangle + |du\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\ |\psi_2\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|uu\rangle + |dd\rangle) \\ |\psi_3\rangle &= \frac{1}{5} (3|uu\rangle + 4|ud\rangle) \end{aligned}$$

For each one, calculate Alice's density matrix, and Bob's density matrix. Check their properties.

Let's recall first the definition of the matrix elements for Alice's density matrix, and second, by symmetry, Bob's:

$$\rho_{a'a} = \sum_b \psi^*(a, b) \psi(a', b); \quad \rho_{b'b} = \sum_a \psi^*(a, b) \psi(a, b')$$

---

Let's start with  $|\psi_1\rangle$ . We know Alice's matrix must be of the form:

$$\rho_A = \begin{pmatrix} \rho_{uu} & \rho_{ud} \\ \rho_{du} & \rho_{dd} \end{pmatrix}$$

And so must be Bob's actually. Filling in with our previous formulas, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_{1A} &= \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1^*(u, u) \psi_1(u, u) + \psi_1^*(u, d) \psi_1(u, d) & \psi_1^*(d, u) \psi_1(u, u) + \psi_1^*(d, d) \psi_1(u, d) \\ \psi_1^*(u, u) \psi_1(d, u) + \psi_1^*(u, d) \psi_1(d, d) & \psi_1^*(d, u) \psi_1(d, u) + \psi_1^*(d, d) \psi_1(d, d) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} (1/2)(1/2) + (1/2)(1/2) & (1/2)(1/2) + (1/2)(1/2) \\ (1/2)(1/2) + (1/2)(1/2) & (1/2)(1/2) + (1/2)(1/2) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix}} \end{aligned}$$

Where, remember, the wave function's values correspond to the basis vector coefficients, which are all 1/2 here. By symmetry, we would obtain exactly the same matrix for Bob:

$$\rho_{1B} = \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix}}$$

Let's check the density matrices properties:

- Clearly,  $\rho_{1A} = \rho_{1B}$  is Hermitian;
- Its trace is  $1/2 + 1/2 = 1$ , as expected;
- Let's compute its square:

$$\rho_{1A}^2 = \rho_{1B}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = \rho_{1A} = \rho_{1B}$$

And  $\text{Tr}(\rho_{1A}^2) = \text{Tr}(\rho_{1B}^2) = 1$ , from which we can conclude that  $\psi_1$  is a pure state.

- Without having to compute them explicitly, this implies that its eigenvalues must be 0 and 1.

Let's compute the eigenvalues by partially diagonalizing the matrix anyway for practice: an eigenvector  $|\lambda\rangle$  is tied to an eigenvalue  $\lambda$  by:

$$\rho_{1A}|\lambda\rangle = \lambda|\lambda\rangle \Leftrightarrow \rho_{1A}|\lambda\rangle - \lambda|\lambda\rangle = 0 \Leftrightarrow (\rho_{1A} - \lambda I)|\lambda\rangle = 0$$

Because an eigenvector is by definition non-zero, this implies that  $\rho_{1A} - \lambda I$  must be non-invertible<sup>41</sup>. This implies that:

$$\det(\rho_{1A} - \lambda I) = 0 \Leftrightarrow 0 = \begin{vmatrix} 1/2 - \lambda & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = \left(\frac{1}{2} - \lambda\right)^2 - \frac{1}{2} = \left(\frac{1}{2} - \lambda - \frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2} - \lambda + \frac{1}{2}\right) = \lambda(\lambda - 1)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \lambda = 0 \\ \lambda = 1 \end{cases}$$

As expected.

Let's move on to  $\psi_2$ : by a similar reasoning as before we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_{2A} &= \begin{pmatrix} \psi_2^*(u, u)\psi_2(u, u) + \psi_2^*(u, d)\psi_2(u, d) & \psi_2^*(d, u)\psi_2(u, u) + \psi_2^*(d, d)\psi_2(u, d) \\ \psi_2^*(u, u)\psi_2(d, u) + \psi_2^*(u, d)\psi_2(d, d) & \psi_2^*(d, u)\psi_2(d, u) + \psi_2^*(d, d)\psi_2(d, d) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} (1/\sqrt{2})(1/\sqrt{2}) + (0)(0) & (0)(1/\sqrt{2}) + (1/\sqrt{2})(0) \\ (1/\sqrt{2})(0) + (0)(1/\sqrt{2}) & (0)(0) + (1/\sqrt{2})(1/\sqrt{2}) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Again, by a symmetry argument, we can already conclude that  $\rho_{2B} = \rho_{2A}$  (the idea is that you can swap the labels corresponding to Bob and Alice in the description of the state  $\psi_2$  and by reordering the terms, you see that the state is unchanged).

Finally, let's check the density matrices properties:

1. Clearly Hermitian;
2.  $\text{Tr}(\rho_{2A}) = 1/2 + 1/2 = 1$ ;
3. Let's compute the square to determine the state quality:

$$\rho_{2A}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1/4 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/4 \end{pmatrix} \neq \rho_{2A}$$

and  $\text{Tr}(\rho_{2A}^2) = 1/2 < 1$ :  $\psi_2$  is a mixed state;

4. The matrix is diagonal: clearly, all its eigenvalue (there's a single degenerate eigenvalue  $1/2$ ) are positive and  $\leq 1$ .

<sup>41</sup>For otherwise, multiply both sides of the equation by its inverse: LHS is equal to  $|\lambda\rangle$  while the RHS is still equal to 0

Moving on to the last one. Observe that this time, there is not symmetry between Alice and Bob matrices, so we'll have to compute them both.

$$\begin{aligned}
\rho_{3A} &= \begin{pmatrix} \psi_3^*(u,u)\psi_3(u,u) + \psi_3^*(u,d)\psi_3(u,d) & \psi_3^*(d,u)\psi_3(u,u) + \psi_3^*(d,d)\psi_3(u,d) \\ \psi_3^*(u,u)\psi_3(d,u) + \psi_3^*(u,d)\psi_3(d,d) & \psi_3^*(d,u)\psi_3(d,u) + \psi_3^*(d,d)\psi_3(d,d) \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} (3/5)(3/5) + (4/5)(4/5) & (0)(3/5) + (0)(4/5) \\ (3/5)(0) + (4/5)(0) & (0)(0) + (0)(0) \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} 9/25 + 16/25 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}
\end{aligned}$$

Regarding density matrices properties:

1. Hermitian;
2.  $\text{Tr}(\rho_{3A}) = 1 + 0 = 1$ ;
3.  $\rho_{3A}^2 = \rho_{3A}$  :  $\boxed{\psi_3 \text{ is a pure state}}$ ;
4. This is confirmed by the eigenvalues 1 and 0 (matrix trivially diagonal).

Remains Bob's matrix!

$$\begin{aligned}
\rho_{3B} &= \begin{pmatrix} \psi_3^*(u,u)\psi_3(u,u) + \psi_3^*(d,u)\psi_3(d,u) & \psi_3^*(u,u)\psi_3(u,d) + \psi_3^*(d,u)\psi_3(d,d) \\ \psi_3^*(u,d)\psi_3(u,u) + \psi_3^*(d,d)\psi_3(d,u) & \psi_3^*(u,d)\psi_3(u,d) + \psi_3^*(d,d)\psi_3(d,d) \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} (3/5)(3/5) + (0)(0) & (3/5)(4/5) + (0)(0) \\ (4/5)(3/5) + (0)(0) & (4/5)(4/5) + (0)(0) \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \boxed{\frac{1}{25} \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 12 \\ 12 & 16 \end{pmatrix}}
\end{aligned}$$

One last time, let's check its density matrices properties:

1. Clearly Hermitian;
2.  $\text{Tr}(\rho_{3B}) = 9/25 + 16/25 = 1$ ;
3. Let's square it to determine the state quality:

$$\begin{aligned}
\rho_{3B}^2 &= \frac{1}{25^2} \begin{pmatrix} 9 \times 9 + 12 \times 12 & 9 \times 12 + 12 \times 16 \\ 12 \times 9 + 16 \times 12 & 12 \times 12 + 16 \times 16 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{25^2} \begin{pmatrix} 81 + 100 + 40 + 4 & 90 + 18 + 100 + 80 + 12 \\ 90 + 18 + 100 + 80 + 12 & 100 + 40 + 4 + 100 + 120 + 36 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{25^2} \begin{pmatrix} 225 & 300 \\ 300 & 400 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{25^2} \begin{pmatrix} (4 \times 2 + 1) \times 25 & 3 \times 4 \times 25 \\ 3 \times 4 \times 25 & 4 \times 4 \times 25 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{25} \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 12 \\ 12 & 16 \end{pmatrix} = \rho_{3B}
\end{aligned}$$

Thus  $\text{Tr}(\rho_{3B}^2) = \text{Tr}(\rho_{3B}) = 1$  and  $\boxed{\psi_3 \text{ is a pure state}}$ ;

4. This implies again that its eigenvalues must be 0 and 1

Let's compute the eigenvalues for practice, going a bit faster this time:

$$\begin{vmatrix} 9/25 - \lambda & 12/25 \\ 12/25 & 16/25 - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \left( \left( \frac{9}{25} - \lambda \right) \left( \frac{16}{25} - \lambda \right) - \left( \frac{12}{25} \right)^2 \right) = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Leftrightarrow \lambda^2 - \lambda + \frac{9 \times 16}{25^2} - \left(\frac{12}{25}\right)^2 = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \lambda^2 - \lambda + \frac{3 \times 3 \times 4 \times 4}{25^2} - \frac{3 \times 4 \times 3 \times 4}{25^2} = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \lambda(\lambda - 1) = 0 \\
&\Leftrightarrow \boxed{\begin{cases} \lambda = 0 \\ \lambda = 1 \end{cases}}
\end{aligned}$$

## 7.7 Tests for Entanglement

### 7.7.1 The Correlation Test for Entanglement

**Exercise 37.** Given any Alice observable  $\mathbf{A}$  and Bob observable  $\mathbf{B}$ , show that for a product state, the correlation  $C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B})$  is zero.

Recall that we're in the context of a composite system  $S_{AB}$  made from two state spaces, one corresponding to Alice,  $S_A$ , and one corresponding to Bob,  $S_B$ , mathematically tied by a tensor product.

The correlation  $C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B})$  between two observables  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  is defined as<sup>42</sup>:

$$C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) := \langle \mathbf{AB} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle$$

Remember that the authors proved<sup>43</sup> that the expected value  $\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle$  of an observable  $\mathbf{L}$  being in a state  $|\Psi\rangle$  is:

$$\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle = \langle \Psi | \mathbf{L} | \Psi \rangle$$

---

Here's a first derivation, where we use the following formula<sup>44</sup> defined for an observable  $\mathbf{L}$ , and a system described by a density matrix  $\rho$ :

$$\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle = \text{Tr}(\rho \mathbf{L})$$

Recall<sup>45</sup> that for any operator  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ , in particular, where  $\mathbf{AB} \neq \mathbf{BA}$ , we still have:

$$\text{Tr}(\mathbf{AB}) = \text{Tr}(\mathbf{BA})$$

We also know<sup>46</sup> that, because we're dealing with a product state, this can't be a mixed state (it cannot be expressed as a weighted sum of multiple states), i.e if we name  $|\Psi\rangle$  that (pure) product state:

$$\rho = |\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|$$

Finally<sup>47</sup>, again because that product state is pure, we have  $\rho^2 = \rho$ , which should be clear from the previous expression of  $\rho$ , as  $|\Psi\rangle$  is normalized ( $\sqrt{\langle\Psi|\Psi\rangle} = 1$ ) and the "product(s)" being associative.

It follows that:

$$\begin{aligned}
C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) &:= \langle \mathbf{AB} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle \\
&= \text{Tr}(\rho \mathbf{AB}) - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle \\
&= \text{Tr}(\rho^2 \mathbf{AB}) - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle \\
&= \text{Tr}(\rho(\mathbf{A}\rho\mathbf{B})) - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle \\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}\rho\mathbf{B} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle \\
&= \langle \Psi | \mathbf{A}\rho\mathbf{B} | \Psi \rangle - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle \\
&= \langle \Psi | \mathbf{A}\rho\mathbf{B} | \Psi \rangle - \langle \Psi | \mathbf{A} \underbrace{|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi|}_{\rho} \mathbf{B} | \Psi \rangle \\
&= \boxed{0} \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>42</sup>The authors are a bit irregular in their use of boldface for operators; I'll try to do better, but things should be clear from the context

<sup>43</sup>p106, section 4.7 - *Expectation values*

<sup>44</sup>p206, section 7.5 - *Entanglement for two spins*

<sup>45</sup>p209, section 7.5 - *Entanglement for two spins*

<sup>46</sup>p202, section 7.5 - *Entanglement for two spins*

<sup>47</sup>p207, section 7.5 - *Entanglement for two spins*

---

Here's a second solution, rephrased from Michel Rennes's approach.

We start by expressing the expectation value in terms of an inner-product again, assuming we start in the state  $|\Psi\rangle$ :

$$\langle \mathbf{AB} \rangle = \langle \Psi | \mathbf{AB} | \Psi \rangle$$

Then, recall that  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  are two observables respectively from Alice and Bob's state spaces, which have been extended, as previously studied, so as to be able to act on a state vector  $|\Psi\rangle$ , taken from the composite system  $S_{AB}$ .

We definitely need this to be able to express the correlation  $C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B})$  in terms of those inner-products, for otherwise, the second terms in the equation below applying  $\mathbf{A}$  or  $\mathbf{B}$  to  $|\Psi\rangle$  wouldn't make any sense:

$$C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) = \langle \Psi | \mathbf{AB} | \Psi \rangle - \langle \Psi | \mathbf{A} | \Psi \rangle \langle \Psi | \mathbf{B} | \Psi \rangle$$

Hence there's an abuse of notation: with  $\mathbf{I}_X$  being the identity operator on the space  $S_X$ :

$$\mathbf{A}'' = \mathbf{A} \otimes \mathbf{I}_B; \quad \mathbf{B}'' = \mathbf{I}_A \otimes \mathbf{B}$$

For clarity, I'll note  $\mathbf{A}_A$  the observable  $\mathbf{A}$  expressed in the system  $S_A$ , and similarly for  $\mathbf{B}_B$ :

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}_A \otimes \mathbf{I}_B; \quad \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{I}_A \otimes \mathbf{B}_B$$

Regarding  $|\Psi\rangle$ , this is a product state, and we know<sup>48</sup> that it can be expressed as a tensor product of a state in  $S_A$  and of a state in  $S_B$ :

$$|\Psi\rangle = |\psi\rangle \otimes |\phi\rangle$$

We can then rewrite:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \mathbf{AB} \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \mathbf{AB} | \Psi \rangle \\ &= (\langle \psi | \otimes \langle \phi |) \mathbf{AB} (|\psi\rangle \otimes |\phi\rangle) \\ &= (\langle \psi | \otimes \langle \phi |) \mathbf{A} ((\mathbf{I}_A \otimes \mathbf{B}_B) (|\psi\rangle \otimes |\phi\rangle)) \\ &= (\langle \psi | \otimes \langle \phi |) \mathbf{A} \left( \underbrace{\mathbf{I}_A |\psi\rangle}_{|\psi\rangle} \otimes \mathbf{B}_B |\phi\rangle \right) \\ &= (\langle \psi | \otimes \langle \phi |) (\mathbf{A}_A |\psi\rangle \otimes \mathbf{B}_B |\phi\rangle) \end{aligned}$$

Where I've skipped the development for the application of  $\mathbf{A}$  (same procedure as for applying  $\mathbf{B}$ ). Then, observe<sup>49</sup> that  $\langle \psi |$  is an operator defined on  $S_A$ , and similarly for  $\langle \phi |$  being an operator defined on  $S_B$ . Their tensor product is then an operator defined on  $S_{AB}$  and the usual rules for applying this combined operator hold:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \mathbf{AB} \rangle &= (\langle \psi | \mathbf{A}_A | \psi \rangle) \otimes (\langle \phi | \mathbf{B}_B | \phi \rangle) \\ &= \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Hence clearly,  $C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) := \langle \mathbf{AB} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle = 0$ .

---

For completeness, here's one last solution, rephrased from Filip Van Lijsebetten's approach (p52), which relies on the probabilistic definition of the average value.

Remember that the average value of an observable  $\mathbf{L}$  is (mathematically) defined<sup>50</sup> as:

$$\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle := \sum_i \lambda_i P(\lambda_i)$$

---

<sup>48</sup>p164, section 6.5 - *Product states*

<sup>49</sup>It would be interesting to formalized that more thoroughly. If I'm not mistaken the idea is that the bras of  $S_A \otimes S_B$  can be expressed as a combination of one bra from  $S_A$  and one bra from  $S_B$ . More precisely, the bras being elements of the dual spaces, it's because of the following (canonical) isomorphism:  $S_{AB}^* = (S_A \otimes S_B)^* \cong S_A^* \otimes S_B^*$ , see for instance <https://planetmath.org/tensorproductofdualspacesisadualspaceoftensorproduct>

<sup>50</sup>p105, section 4.7 - *Expectation values*

Hence:

$$\langle \mathbf{AB} \rangle = \sum_{ab} \lambda_{ab} P(\lambda_{ab}); \quad \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle = \sum_a \lambda_a P(\lambda_a); \quad \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle = \sum_b \lambda_b P(\lambda_b)$$

Recall that the  $ab$  corresponds to all labels created by concatenating all potential values for  $a$  and  $b$ . This means that we'll have  $\sum_{ab} = \sum_{a,b} := \sum_a \sum_b$ . Let's rewrite the correlation  $C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B})$ :

$$\begin{aligned} C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) &:= \langle \mathbf{AB} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{A} \rangle \langle \mathbf{B} \rangle \\ &= \left( \sum_{ab} \lambda_{ab} P(\lambda_{ab}) \right) - \left( \sum_a \lambda_a P(\lambda_a) \right) \left( \sum_b \lambda_b P(\lambda_b) \right) \\ &= \left( \sum_{ab} \lambda_{ab} P(\lambda_{ab}) \right) - \left( \sum_a \lambda_a P(\lambda_a) \left( \sum_b \lambda_b P(\lambda_b) \right) \right) \\ &= \left( \sum_{ab} \lambda_{ab} P(\lambda_{ab}) \right) - \left( \sum_a \sum_b \lambda_a P(\lambda_a) \lambda_b P(\lambda_b) \right) \\ &= \left( \sum_{ab} \lambda_{ab} P(\lambda_{ab}) \right) - \left( \sum_{a,b} \lambda_a \lambda_b P(\lambda_a) P(\lambda_b) \right) \\ &= \sum_{a,b} \left( \lambda_{ab} P(\lambda_{ab}) - \lambda_a \lambda_b P(\lambda_a) P(\lambda_b) \right) \end{aligned}$$

Now the notation is a bit confusing<sup>51</sup>, but recall that  $\lambda_{ab}$  corresponds to the value we get for our combined state (which occurs with a probability of  $P(\lambda_{ab})$ ). And this precisely corresponds the fact that we have  $\lambda_a$  in the subspace  $S_A$  and  $\lambda_b$  in the subspace  $S_B$ : so we can read it like  $\lambda_{ab} \simeq \lambda_a \lambda_b$ . Hence this factors as:

$$C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}) = \sum_{a,b} \lambda_{ab} (P(\lambda_{ab}) - P(\lambda_a) P(\lambda_b))$$

**Remark 21.** *So far, we've essentially just restated with a different notation what we did in L06E01*

Now by definition for a product state, there is independence between the two "events": the measurement of either  $A$  or  $B$  doesn't affect the other one. That is,  $P(\lambda_{ab}) = P(\lambda_a) P(\lambda_b)$ <sup>52</sup>, hence the correlation really is zero.  $\square$

## 7.7.2 The Density Matrix Test for Entanglement

## 7.8 The Process of Measurement

**Exercise 38.** *Verify that the state-vector in 7.30 represents a completely untangled state.*

Let's recall the state-vector from 7.30, and let's call it  $|\Psi\rangle$ .

$$|\Psi\rangle = \alpha_u |u, b\rangle + \alpha_d |d, b\rangle$$

As I've found this confusing, let me start by recalling a bit of vocabulary<sup>53</sup>. A quantum state can be either **pure** or **mixed**: either its a single state, or a *convex combination*<sup>54</sup> of pure states. This is true for a "regular" state space, as for a state space built via a tensor products of two (or finitely many, by induction) other state spaces.

Now there's a second qualification, that is only applicable for states which are taken from a state space made by glueing two (again, or finitely many) other state spaces: **entangled** states, and **disentangled** states.

<sup>51</sup>I could have made things a bit clearer: for instance, we really have three different probability distributions, one for each state involved, but they are all denoted very similarly.

<sup>52</sup>This is the definition of independence of events in ordinary probability theory: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Independence\\_\(probability\\_theory\)#For\\_events](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Independence_(probability_theory)#For_events)

<sup>53</sup>See for instance: <https://www.researchgate.net/post/What-is-difference-between-mixed-state-and-mixed-entangled-state>

<sup>54</sup>A fancy term you may find here and there: a linear combination of elements, where the scalars factors sums to 1; see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convex\\_combination](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convex_combination)



*Mixed* and *entangled* are definitely not synonymous: you can have a non-mixed (i.e. pure) entangled state for example.

**Example 1.** *The state vector from 7.30 is a pure state: this is not a convex combination of states. But this tells us absolutely nothing regarding whether it's an entangled state. We know however that it makes sense to talk about it being entangled or not, as we're dealing with a combined system involving (i) an apparatus and (ii) a spin to be measured by said apparatus.*

We could test this purity by computing the density matrix  $\rho$ , and checking whether  $\rho^2 = \rho$  or  $\text{Tr}(\rho) = 1$ .

Let's clarify the vocabulary one step further: a **completely untangled state** is a **product state**: that's a state where measurements on one subsystem affect in no ways the other subsystem(s).

From there, we have a few different ways of proceeding.

The simplest approach is to remember that a state is a product state when it can be expressed via two components (well, or more, but we're in the case where there are two subsystems here: the apparatus, and the spin to be measured with the apparatus), one for each subsystem. Recall that  $|a, \alpha\rangle$  really is a shortcut for  $|a\rangle \otimes |\alpha\rangle$ . This means, the prepared state really is:

$$\alpha_u|u\rangle \otimes |b\rangle + \alpha_d|d\rangle \otimes |b\rangle$$

But the tensor product distributes<sup>55</sup>, hence this simplifies as:

$$(\alpha_u|u\rangle + \alpha_d|d\rangle) \otimes |b\rangle$$

As the combined state is normalized, we must have  $\sqrt{\alpha_u^2 + \alpha_d^2} = 1$ , which implies that the sub-state corresponding to the spin is also normalized. Trivially, the sub-state corresponding to the apparatus is also normalized. Hence, we've expressed our combined state as a tensor product of two normalized state, one for each subsystems: this is a product state.

A slightly more involved (calculus-wise) variant of this approach would be to rely on the general form of the product state<sup>56</sup> and to evaluate whether our state vector can be expressed in such a way. The general form can be computed, again using the distributive nature of the tensor product:

$$\begin{aligned} |\text{product state}\rangle &= \left\{ \alpha_u|u\rangle + \alpha_d|d\rangle \right\} \otimes \left\{ \beta_b|b\rangle + \beta_+|+1\rangle + \beta_-|-1\rangle \right\} \\ &= \alpha_u|u\rangle \otimes \left\{ \beta_b|b\rangle + \beta_+|+1\rangle + \beta_-|-1\rangle \right\} + \alpha_d|d\rangle \otimes \left\{ \beta_b|b\rangle + \beta_+|+1\rangle + \beta_-|-1\rangle \right\} \\ &= \alpha_u\beta_d|u, b\rangle + \alpha_u\beta_+|u, +1\rangle + \alpha_u\beta_-|u, -1\rangle + \alpha_d\beta_d|d, b\rangle + \alpha_d\beta_+|d, +1\rangle + \alpha_d\beta_-|d, -1\rangle \end{aligned}$$

By setting:

$$\beta_d = 1; \beta_+ = \beta_- = 0$$

We found back the state vector from 7.30, retrospectively justifying the notation for  $\alpha_u$  and  $\alpha_d$ . Because the subsystem states, must be normalized, the resulting combined state is also normalized.

However, and perhaps this is more in line with the author's intent, we've just saw<sup>57</sup> two tests to check whether the state corresponding to a given a wave-function for a composite system is entangled or not.

<sup>55</sup>As is common in most Physics-centered introduction to Quantum Mechanics, the tensor product introduction is a bit hand-wavy. For a more rigorous development, see for instance this video by F. Schuller. Some subtleties such as the fact that the equivalence classes respect addition and scalar multiplication have been left as homework; there's a set of notes which contains the "missing" proofs.

<sup>56</sup>p164, section 6.5 - *Product states*

<sup>57</sup>p212 and onward, section 7.7 *Tests for Entanglement*

For the first criteria, we'd need to take any two arbitrary observables from each subsystem, say observable  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ , and prove that their correlation  $C(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B})$  is zero. But essentially, the proof will end up relying on the tensor product distributivity, rely on the density matrix (see just after), or essentially mimic the proofs of L07E09.

I don't think there's added value to develop it further here.

The second technique is slightly more original: the idea is that, for any product state, the density matrix has exactly one non-zero eigenvalue, and that eigenvalue is exactly 1.

Recall that in L07E04 we've already determined Alice's density matrix:

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \alpha_u & \alpha_u^* \alpha_d \\ \alpha_d^* \alpha_u & \alpha_d^* \alpha_d \end{pmatrix}$$

Let's diagonalize it: as usual, we have the eigenvector/eigenvalue relationship:

$$\rho|\lambda\rangle = \lambda|\lambda\rangle \Leftrightarrow (\rho - I_2\lambda)|\lambda\rangle = 0$$

Which implies that  $\rho - I_2\lambda$  isn't invertible<sup>58</sup>, which translates to its determinant being equal to zero:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} \alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \lambda & \alpha_u^* \alpha_d \\ \alpha_d^* \alpha_u & \alpha_d^* \alpha_d - \lambda \end{vmatrix} &= \left( (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \lambda)(\alpha_d^* \alpha_d - \lambda) \right) - \left( \alpha_u^* \alpha_d \alpha_d^* \alpha_u \right) \\ &= \left( \alpha_u^* \alpha_u \alpha_d^* \alpha_d - \lambda(\underbrace{\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d}_{=\langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle = 1}) + \lambda^2 \right) - \alpha_u^* \alpha_d \alpha_d^* \alpha_u \\ &= \lambda(1 - \lambda) \end{aligned}$$

Clearly, we have one non-zero eigenvalue which is exactly one: the criteria indeed applies, and the state must be non-entangled.

## 7.9 Entanglement and Locality

## 7.10 The Quantum Sim: An Introduction to Bell's Theorem

## 7.11 Entanglement Summary

**Exercise 39.** Calculate Alice's density matrix for  $\sigma_z$  for the "near-singlet" state.

The "near-singlet" state is characterized by the following state-vector:

$$|\Psi\rangle = \sqrt{0.6}|ud\rangle - \sqrt{0.4}|du\rangle$$

Alice's density matrix is defined by its components in Eq. 7.20<sup>59</sup>:

$$\rho_{a'a} = \sum_b \psi^*(a, b) \psi(a', b)$$

Where  $\psi(a, b)$  is the wave-function of the composite system, that we can extract from  $|\Psi\rangle$ :

$$|\Psi\rangle = \psi(u, u)|uu\rangle + \psi(u, d)|ud\rangle + \psi(d, u)|du\rangle + \psi(d, d)|dd\rangle \Rightarrow \begin{cases} \psi(u, u) = \psi(d, d) & = 0 \\ \psi(u, d) & = \sqrt{0.6} \\ \psi(d, u) & = -\sqrt{0.4} \end{cases}$$

Hence:

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} \rho_{uu} & \rho_{ud} \\ \rho_{du} & \rho_{dd} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \psi^*(u, u)\psi(u, u) + \psi^*(u, d)\psi(u, d) & \psi^*(d, u)\psi(u, u) + \psi^*(d, d)\psi(u, d) \\ \psi^*(u, u)\psi(d, u) + \psi^*(u, d)\psi(d, d) & \psi^*(d, u)\psi(d, u) + \psi^*(d, d)\psi(d, d) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.6 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \square$$

<sup>58</sup>Multiply both side of the equation by the inverse, and use the fact that an eigenvector cannot be the zero vector

<sup>59</sup>p205, section 7.5 *Entanglement for Two Spins*

**Remark 22.** *I'm not sure what the authors expect regarding  $\sigma_z$ ; we're asked to verify all numerical values in the next exercise, which likely should cover pretty much every interpretation (we'll even have to compute Alice's density matrix again, so as to check  $\rho^2/\text{Tr}(\rho^2)$ ).*

**Exercise 40.** *Verify the numerical values in each rap sheet.*

**Remark 23.** *This is a long "solution": I'm taking the time to rederive some results that were previously established either in the course, or in earlier exercises, while, clarifying what I think is a important source of confusion: the elements of an Hilbert space (the so-called "state-space") aren't the states of a quantum system. More on that when exploring the singlet state.*

*Some numerical results have been automatically computed by a R script, inlined at the end of this exercise.*

---

Let's start by recalling a few things before diving in.

We are, as usual, in the case of two spin systems, one for Alice,  $S_A$ , one for Bob,  $S_B$ . A composite system  $S_{AB}$  is then created from those two via a tensor product.

When relevant, we'll be using the usual ordered bases:

- $\{|u\rangle, |d\rangle\}$  for  $S_A$ ;
- $\{|u\rangle, |d\rangle\}$  for  $S_B$ ;
- and  $\{|uu\rangle, |ud\rangle, |du\rangle, |dd\rangle\}$  for  $S_{AB}$ .

Then, let's recall the Pauli matrices corresponding to the observables associated to the spin "components": (from Eqs. 3.20, at the end of section 3.4)

$$\tau_z^B = \sigma_z^A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tau_x^B = \sigma_x^A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tau_y^B = \sigma_y^A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Implicitly, the matrices are expressed in the ordered basis of the corresponding sub-system,  $S_A$  for  $\sigma_i^1$  and  $S_B$  for  $\tau_i^{B60}$ . We will also need the matrix forms for the lifted operators from the sub-systems to the composite system, where  $I^A$  is the identity operator on  $S_A$  and  $I^B$  the identity operator on  $S_B$ , again implicitly relying on  $S_{AB}$ 's usual ordered basis.

**Remark 24.** *We could have used the equivalent tables provided in annexes in the book, or the results of previous exercises.*

**Remark 25.** *Note that the final result appears twice below: this isn't an error. The first occurrence is a manual computation, while the second has been automatically performed in R.*

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_z &:= \sigma_z^A \otimes I^B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \tau_z &:= I^A \otimes \tau_z^B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \sigma_x &:= \sigma_x^A \otimes I^B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \tau_x &:= I^A \otimes \tau_x^B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>60</sup>Strictly speaking, the operators aren't equal; their matrix representation in their respective-basis are. The equals signs are to be understood in this context.

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_y &:= \sigma_y^A \otimes I^B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -i & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -i \\ i & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & i & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -i & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -i \\ i & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & i & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \tau_y &:= I^A \otimes \tau_y^B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i & 0 & 0 \\ i & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -i \\ 0 & 0 & i & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i & 0 & 0 \\ i & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -i \\ 0 & 0 & i & 0 \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

We'll also need a few more "combined" observables. I'll skip the manual matrix multiplication here: those have been automatically computed by  $R$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_z \tau_z &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}; & \tau_z \sigma_z &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \tau_x \sigma_x &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; & \tau_y \sigma_y &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

Finally, let's recall one more time the formula for the expectation value  $\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle$  of an observable  $\mathbf{L}$  of a system in a state  $|\Psi\rangle$ :

$$\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle = \langle \Psi | \mathbf{L} | \Psi \rangle$$

## Product state

We're starting from the following state-vector for the composite system, and using various properties of the tensor product of vector states we progressively reach:

$$\begin{aligned}|\Psi\rangle &= \alpha_u \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |ud\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_u |du\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |dd\rangle \\ &= \alpha_u \beta_u |u\rangle \otimes |u\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |u\rangle \otimes |d\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_u |d\rangle \otimes |u\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |d\rangle \otimes |d\rangle \\ &= (\alpha_u |u\rangle) \otimes (\beta_u |u\rangle) + (\alpha_u |u\rangle) \otimes (\beta_d |d\rangle) + (\alpha_d |d\rangle) \otimes (\beta_u |u\rangle) + (\alpha_d |d\rangle) \otimes (\beta_d |d\rangle) \\ &= \alpha_u |u\rangle \otimes (\beta_d |d\rangle + \beta_u |u\rangle) + \alpha_d |d\rangle \otimes (\beta_u |u\rangle + \beta_d |d\rangle) \\ &= \underbrace{(\alpha_u |u\rangle + \alpha_d |d\rangle)}_{=:\phi} \otimes \underbrace{(\beta_d |d\rangle + \beta_u |u\rangle)}_{=:\psi}\end{aligned}$$

We've verified that this particular composite state is a state product: it can be expressed as the tensor product of two states,  $|\phi\rangle \in S_A$  and  $|\psi\rangle \in S_B$ .

The normalization condition yields:

$$\begin{aligned}\| |\Psi\rangle \| &:= \sqrt{\langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle} = 1 \Leftrightarrow \sqrt{\alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d + \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d} = 1 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \sqrt{\alpha_u^* \alpha_u (\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d) + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d (\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d)} = 1 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \sqrt{(\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d) (\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d)} = 1 \\ &\Leftrightarrow (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d) (\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d) = 1 & (\forall \gamma \in \mathbb{C}), \gamma^* \gamma =: |\gamma| > 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d &= 1 \\ \beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d &= 1 \end{cases} \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \sqrt{\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d} &= 1 \\ \sqrt{\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d} &= 1 \end{cases} & (\forall \gamma \in \mathbb{C}), \gamma^* \gamma =: |\gamma| > 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \| |\phi\rangle \| &= 1 \\ \| |\psi\rangle \| &= 1 \end{cases}\end{aligned}$$

We've verified consistency of the normalization condition between the composite system, and the sub-systems: our composite state vector is normalized iff the individual vectors from the sub-systems are normalized.

Moving on to the density matrices, let's do the reasoning for Alice's state only, as the same argument applies to Bob's. Let's first stay in  $S_A$ . We know that the subsystem's state is a *pure* state  $|\phi\rangle$ : it's a convex combination<sup>61</sup> with a single term. The density matrix  $\rho^A$  is thus:

$$\rho^A = 1|\phi\rangle\langle\phi| = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \\ \alpha_d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* & \alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u\alpha_u^* & \alpha_u\alpha_d^* \\ \alpha_d\alpha_u^* & \alpha_d\alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix}$$

It is immediate to check that  $\rho^A$  is Hermitian ( $\rho^A = (\rho^A)^\dagger$ ), as  $(\alpha_u\alpha_d^*)^* = \alpha_d\alpha_u^*$ . Furthermore:

$$\text{Tr}(\rho^A) = \alpha_u\alpha_u^* + \alpha_d\alpha_d^* = 1 \text{ (because of the normalization condition)}$$

We also have:

$$\begin{aligned} (\rho^A)^2 &= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u\alpha_u^* & \alpha_u\alpha_d^* \\ \alpha_d\alpha_u^* & \alpha_d\alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u\alpha_u^* & \alpha_u\alpha_d^* \\ \alpha_d\alpha_u^* & \alpha_d\alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} (\alpha_u\alpha_u^*)(\alpha_u\alpha_u^*) + (\alpha_u\alpha_d^*)(\alpha_d\alpha_u^*) & (\alpha_u\alpha_u^*)(\alpha_u\alpha_d^*) + (\alpha_u\alpha_d^*)(\alpha_d\alpha_d^*) \\ (\alpha_d\alpha_u^*)(\alpha_u\alpha_u^*) + (\alpha_d\alpha_d^*)(\alpha_d\alpha_u^*) & (\alpha_d\alpha_u^*)(\alpha_u\alpha_d^*) + (\alpha_d\alpha_d^*)(\alpha_d\alpha_d^*) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \underbrace{(\alpha_u\alpha_u^*)(\alpha_u\alpha_u^* + \alpha_d\alpha_d^*)}_{=1} & \underbrace{(\alpha_u\alpha_d^*)(\alpha_u\alpha_u^* + \alpha_d\alpha_d^*)}_{=1} \\ \underbrace{(\alpha_d\alpha_u^*)(\alpha_u\alpha_u^* + \alpha_d\alpha_d^*)}_{=1} & \underbrace{(\alpha_d\alpha_d^*)(\alpha_u\alpha_u^* + \alpha_d\alpha_d^*)}_{=1} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \rho^A \end{aligned}$$

And naturally,  $\text{Tr}((\rho^A)^2) = \text{Tr}(\rho) = 1$ . Those last two conditions are indeed we expect for a pure state.

Let's move on to diagonalizing  $\rho^A$ . As usual, eigenvectors  $|\lambda\rangle$  are tied to their corresponding eigenvalues  $\lambda$  via:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho^A|\lambda\rangle &= \lambda|\lambda\rangle \Leftrightarrow (\rho^A - \mathbf{I}^A\lambda)|\lambda\rangle = 0 \Leftrightarrow |\rho^A - \mathbf{I}^A\lambda| = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{vmatrix} \alpha_u\alpha_u^* - \lambda & \alpha_u\alpha_d^* \\ \alpha_d\alpha_u^* & \alpha_d\alpha_d^* - \lambda \end{vmatrix} \\ &\Leftrightarrow (\alpha_u\alpha_u^* - \lambda)(\alpha_d\alpha_d^* - \lambda) - \alpha_d\alpha_u^*\alpha_u\alpha_d^* = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \lambda^2 - \underbrace{(\alpha_u\alpha_u^* + \alpha_d\alpha_d^*)}_{=1}\lambda = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \lambda(\lambda - 1) = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \lambda = 0 \\ \lambda = 1 \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Let's verify that the eigenvector  $|\lambda_1\rangle$  associated to  $\lambda = 1$  is indeed the wave-function associated to Alice's sub-system, i.e with components  $\alpha_u$  and  $\alpha_d$

$$\rho^A|\lambda_1\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u\alpha_u^* & \alpha_u\alpha_d^* \\ \alpha_d\alpha_u^* & \alpha_d\alpha_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \\ \alpha_d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u\alpha_u^*\alpha_u + \alpha_u\alpha_d^*\alpha_d \\ \alpha_d\alpha_u^*\alpha_u + \alpha_d\alpha_d^*\alpha_d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \underbrace{\alpha_u(\alpha_u^*\alpha_u + \alpha_d^*\alpha_d)}_{=1} \\ \underbrace{\alpha_d(\alpha_u^*\alpha_u + \alpha_d^*\alpha_d)}_{=1} \end{pmatrix} = 1|\lambda_1\rangle$$

Again, by symmetry, we immediately have for  $S_B$ :

$$\rho_B = \begin{pmatrix} \beta_u\beta_u^* & \beta_u\beta_d^* \\ \beta_d\beta_u^* & \beta_d\beta_d^* \end{pmatrix}; \quad \rho_B^2 = \rho_B; \quad \text{Tr}(\rho_B^2) = \text{Tr}(\rho_B) = 1$$

Same eigenvalues/eigenvectors.

<sup>61</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convex\\_combination](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convex_combination)

What about  $S_{AB}$ ? Well,  $|\Psi\rangle$  still is a pure state in  $S_{AB}$ , meaning, its density matrix again is a convex combination involving a single term; expanding it as a matrix in  $S_{AB}$ 's usual ordered basis yields:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho = 1|\Psi\rangle\langle\Psi| &= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u\beta_u \\ \alpha_u\beta_d \\ \alpha_d\beta_u \\ \alpha_d\beta_d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} (\alpha_u\beta_u)^* & (\alpha_u\beta_d)^* & (\alpha_d\beta_u)^* & (\alpha_d\beta_d)^* \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u\beta_u\alpha_u^*\beta_u^* & \alpha_u\beta_u\alpha_u^*\beta_d^* & \alpha_u\beta_u\alpha_d^*\beta_u^* & \alpha_u\beta_u\alpha_d^*\beta_d^* \\ \alpha_u\beta_d\alpha_u^*\beta_u^* & \alpha_u\beta_d\alpha_u^*\beta_d^* & \alpha_u\beta_d\alpha_d^*\beta_u^* & \alpha_u\beta_d\alpha_d^*\beta_d^* \\ \alpha_d\beta_u\alpha_u^*\beta_u^* & \alpha_d\beta_u\alpha_u^*\beta_d^* & \alpha_d\beta_u\alpha_d^*\beta_u^* & \alpha_d\beta_u\alpha_d^*\beta_d^* \\ \alpha_d\beta_d\alpha_u^*\beta_u^* & \alpha_d\beta_d\alpha_u^*\beta_d^* & \alpha_d\beta_d\alpha_d^*\beta_u^* & \alpha_d\beta_d\alpha_d^*\beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Because this is again a pure state, this time in the  $S_{AB}$  system, we expect the usual formulas to hold. Let's check them for good measure:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Tr}(\rho) &= \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* + \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* + \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* + \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \\ &= \alpha_u \alpha_u^* \underbrace{(\beta_u \beta_u^* + \beta_d \beta_d^*)}_{=1} + \alpha_d \alpha_d^* \underbrace{(\beta_u \beta_u^* + \beta_d \beta_d^*)}_{=1} \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

The following is going to be too tedious to do by hand:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho^2 &= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d \beta_u \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d \beta_d \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \dots \\ &= \rho \end{aligned}$$

With some text reformatting and a few tweak, we can convert the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>Xcode in a Wolfram Alpha matrix:

```

{{a c Conjugate(a) Conjugate(c),a c Conjugate(a) Conjugate(d),
  a c Conjugate(b) Conjugate(c),
  a c Conjugate(b) Conjugate(d)}},
{a d Conjugate(a) Conjugate(c),
  a d Conjugate(a) Conjugate(d),
  a d Conjugate(b) Conjugate(c),
  a d Conjugate(b) Conjugate(d)}},
{b c Conjugate(a) Conjugate(c),
  b c Conjugate(a) Conjugate(d),
  b c Conjugate(b) Conjugate(c),
  b c Conjugate(b) Conjugate(d)}},
{b d Conjugate(a) Conjugate(c),
  b d Conjugate(a) Conjugate(d),
  b d Conjugate(b) Conjugate(c),
  b d Conjugate(b) Conjugate(d)}}

```

[illegible]

2840%29a%5C%2841%29+Conjugate%5C%2840%29d%5C%2841%29%2Cb+d+Conjugate%5C%2840%29b%5C%2841%29+Conjugate%5C%2840%29c%5C%2841%29%2Cb+d+Conjugate%5C%2840%29b%5C%2841%29+Conjugate%5C%2840%29d%5C%2841%29%7D%7D%2C2%5D) to make sure it works:

**Input**

$$\left( \begin{matrix} a c a^* c^* & a c a^* d^* & a c b^* c^* & a c b^* d^* \\ a d a^* c^* & a d a^* d^* & a d b^* c^* & a d b^* d^* \\ b c a^* c^* & b c a^* d^* & b c b^* c^* & b c b^* d^* \\ b d a^* c^* & b d a^* d^* & b d b^* c^* & b d b^* d^* \end{matrix} \right)^2$$

$z^*$  is the complex conjugate of  $z$

**Result**

$$(a a^* + b b^*) (c c^* + d d^*) \begin{pmatrix} a c a^* c^* & a c a^* d^* & a c b^* c^* & a c b^* d^* \\ a d a^* c^* & a d a^* d^* & a d b^* c^* & a d b^* d^* \\ b c a^* c^* & b c a^* d^* & b c b^* c^* & b c b^* d^* \\ b d a^* c^* & b d a^* d^* & b d b^* c^* & b d b^* d^* \end{pmatrix}$$

POWERED BY THE WOLFRAM LANGUAGE

**Remark 26.** The leading factors correspond to the norms of the sub-system states: it's a 1 in disguise. It follows that  $\text{Tr}(\rho^2) = \text{Tr}(\rho) = 1$ .

We've already brushed upon it, but let's make things crystal clear regarding the wave-functions: we have one wave function for each sub-systems:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi^A(|u\rangle) &= \alpha_u; & \psi^B(|u\rangle) &= \beta_u; \\ \psi^A(|d\rangle) &= \alpha_d; & \psi^B(|d\rangle) &= \beta_d. \end{aligned}$$

And a wave-function for the composite system, which indeed factorize as a product of the sub-systems wave-functions:

$$\psi : \begin{cases} |uu\rangle & \rightarrow \alpha_u \beta_u = \psi^A(|u\rangle) \psi^B(|u\rangle) \\ |ud\rangle & \rightarrow \alpha_u \beta_d = \psi^A(|u\rangle) \psi^B(|d\rangle) \\ |du\rangle & \rightarrow \alpha_d \beta_u = \psi^A(|d\rangle) \psi^B(|u\rangle) \\ |dd\rangle & \rightarrow \alpha_d \beta_d = \psi^A(|d\rangle) \psi^B(|d\rangle) \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \psi(a, b) = \psi^A(a) \psi^B(b)$$

Finally, we can crunch some numbers using the usual expectation value formula, using the matrices for the spin observables we've re-established earlier. This could have been automated, but I haven't looked much into how to perform symbolic computation with R.

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \sigma_x \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \sigma_x | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \\ \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u + \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d + \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d \\ &= \beta_u^* \beta_u (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u) + \beta_d^* \beta_d (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u) \\ &= (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u) \underbrace{(\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d)}_{=1} \\ &= \alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u \\ \Rightarrow \langle \sigma_x \rangle^2 &= (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u)^2 \\ &= (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d)^2 + 2 \alpha_u^* \alpha_d \alpha_d^* \alpha_u + (\alpha_d^* \alpha_u)^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_y \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \sigma_y | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -i & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -i \\ i & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & i & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= i \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\alpha_d \beta_u \\ -\alpha_d \beta_d \\ \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= i(-\alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u - \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d + \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d) \\
&= i(-\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u) \underbrace{(\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d)}_{=1} \\
&= i(-\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u) \\
\Rightarrow \langle \sigma_y \rangle^2 &= (i(-\alpha_u^* \alpha_d + \alpha_d^* \alpha_u))^2 \\
&= -(\alpha_d^* \alpha_u)^2 + 2\alpha_d^* \alpha_u \alpha_u^* \alpha_d - (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d)^2 \\
\langle \sigma_z \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \sigma_z | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ -\alpha_d \beta_u \\ -\alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d - \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u - \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d \\
&= \beta_u^* \beta_u (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d) + \beta_d^* \beta_d (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d) \\
&= (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d) \underbrace{(\beta_u^* \beta_u + \beta_d^* \beta_d)}_{=1} \\
&= \alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d \\
\Rightarrow \langle \sigma_z \rangle^2 &= (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d)^2 \\
&= (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u)^2 - 2\alpha_u^* \alpha_u \alpha_d^* \alpha_d + (\alpha_d^* \alpha_d)^2
\end{aligned}$$

We can now compute:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_x \rangle^2 + \langle \sigma_y \rangle^2 + \langle \sigma_z \rangle^2 &= (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d)^2 + 2\alpha_u^* \alpha_d \alpha_d^* \alpha_u + (\alpha_d^* \alpha_u)^2 \\
&\quad - (\alpha_d^* \alpha_u)^2 + 2\alpha_d^* \alpha_u \alpha_u^* \alpha_d - (\alpha_u^* \alpha_d)^2 \\
&\quad + (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u)^2 - 2\alpha_u^* \alpha_u \alpha_d^* \alpha_d + (\alpha_d^* \alpha_d)^2 \\
&= (\alpha_u^* \alpha_u)^2 + 2\alpha_u^* \alpha_u \alpha_d^* \alpha_d + (\alpha_d^* \alpha_d)^2 \\
&= \underbrace{(\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d)}_{=1}^2 \\
&= \boxed{1}
\end{aligned}$$

Moving on to the other spin "components":



$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \tau_x \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \tau_x | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_d + \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_u + \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_d + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_u \\
&= \alpha_u^* \alpha_u (\beta_u^* \beta_d + \beta_d^* \beta_u) + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d (\beta_u^* \beta_d + \beta_d^* \beta_u) \\
&= (\beta_u^* \beta_d + \beta_d^* \beta_u) \underbrace{(\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d)}_{=1} \\
&= \beta_u^* \beta_d + \beta_d^* \beta_u
\end{aligned}$$

**Remark 27.** At this stage, it's important to observe that up to a renaming ( $\beta \leftarrow \alpha$ ), this is the same expression we had for  $\langle \sigma_x \rangle$ . And it makes sense given how symmetrical the "physical" situation is. We expect to find the same thing for the two other components: if this is the case, we could then directly conclude  $\langle \tau_x \rangle^2 + \langle \tau_y \rangle^2 + \langle \tau_z \rangle^2 = 1$ , without additional computations.

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \tau_y \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \tau_y | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i & 0 & 0 \\ i & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -i \\ 0 & 0 & i & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= i \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_u \beta_u \\ -\alpha_d \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \end{pmatrix} \\
&= i(-\alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_d + \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_u - \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_d + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_u) \\
&= i(\alpha_u^* \alpha_u (-\beta_u^* \beta_d + \beta_d^* \beta_u) + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d (-\beta_u^* \beta_d + \beta_d^* \beta_u)) \\
&= i(-\beta_u^* \beta_d + \beta_d^* \beta_u) \underbrace{(\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d)}_{=1} \\
&= i(-\beta_u^* \beta_d + \beta_d^* \beta_u) \\
&=_{\beta \leftarrow \alpha} \langle \sigma_y \rangle \\
\langle \tau_z \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \tau_z | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ -\alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ -\alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u - \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d - \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u - \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d \\
&= \alpha_u^* \alpha_u (\beta_u^* \beta_u - \beta_d^* \beta_d) + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d (\beta_u^* \beta_u - \beta_d^* \beta_d) \\
&= (\beta_u^* \beta_u - \beta_d^* \beta_d) \underbrace{(\alpha_u^* \alpha_u + \alpha_d^* \alpha_d)}_{=1} \\
&= \beta_u^* \beta_u - \beta_d^* \beta_d \\
&=_{\beta \leftarrow \alpha} \langle \sigma_z \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

Hence by our previous remark, indeed:

$$\boxed{\langle \tau_x \rangle^2 + \langle \tau_y \rangle^2 + \langle \tau_z \rangle^2 =_{\beta \leftarrow \alpha} \langle \sigma_x \rangle^2 + \langle \sigma_y \rangle^2 + \langle \sigma_z \rangle^2 = 1}$$

Moving on to the correlation:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \sigma_z \tau_z | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ \alpha_u \beta_d \\ \alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* & \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_u \beta_u \\ -\alpha_u \beta_d \\ -\alpha_d \beta_u \\ \alpha_d \beta_d \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \alpha_u^* \beta_u^* \alpha_u \beta_u - \alpha_u^* \beta_d^* \alpha_u \beta_d - \alpha_d^* \beta_u^* \alpha_d \beta_u + \alpha_d^* \beta_d^* \alpha_d \beta_d \\
&= \alpha_u^* \alpha_u (\beta_u^* \beta_u - \beta_d^* \beta_d) - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d (\beta_u^* \beta_u - \beta_d^* \beta_d) \\
&= \underbrace{(\alpha_u^* \alpha_u - \alpha_d^* \alpha_d)}_{=\langle \sigma_z \rangle} \underbrace{(\beta_u^* \beta_u - \beta_d^* \beta_d)}_{=\langle \tau_z \rangle} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \boxed{\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle - \langle \sigma_z \rangle \langle \tau_z \rangle = 0}
\end{aligned}$$


---

## Singlet state

The singlet state is characteristic of a maximally entangled state:

$$|\Psi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (|ud\rangle - |du\rangle)$$

This means that we *won't* be able to express this state as a tensor product of two states from  $S_A$  and  $S_B$ , as we just did for a product state.

Let's start with the wave function and normalization, for the composite space: the general form of a state vector in this space is:

$$|\Psi\rangle = \psi_{uu}|uu\rangle + \psi_{ud}|ud\rangle + \psi_{du}|du\rangle + \psi_{dd}|dd\rangle$$

While the normalization condition translates to:

$$\| |\Psi\rangle \| = 1 \Leftrightarrow \sqrt{\langle \Psi | \Psi \rangle} = \sqrt{\psi_{uu}^* \psi_{uu} + \psi_{ud}^* \psi_{ud} + \psi_{du}^* \psi_{du} + \psi_{dd}^* \psi_{dd}} = 1$$

But because each individual term under the square root is positive, this is equivalent to:

$$\psi_{uu}^* \psi_{uu} + \psi_{ud}^* \psi_{ud} + \psi_{du}^* \psi_{du} + \psi_{dd}^* \psi_{dd} = 1$$

For the singlet state, the wave function is:

$$\psi : \begin{cases} |uu\rangle \rightarrow \psi_{uu} = 0 \\ |ud\rangle \rightarrow \psi_{ud} = 1/\sqrt{2} \\ |du\rangle \rightarrow \psi_{du} = -1/\sqrt{2} \\ |dd\rangle \rightarrow \psi_{dd} = 0 \end{cases}$$

It's trivial to check that it's normalized.

What's the wave function for each subsystem state? Well, think about it: if there's a wave function for each subsystem, then there's a *pure*, normalized state for each subsystem, and then the composite state can be expressed as a tensor product between those two. Meaning, this composite state *would be* a product state. But, it's claimed here that the composite state is entangled, meaning, it's *not* a product state, and so we shouldn't be able to find such wave-functions for the isolated subsystems.

We've already studied in L06E03 why this particular singlet state isn't a product state, let me recall you how it went: the idea is to identify the general form of a composite state:

$$|\Psi\rangle = \psi_{uu}|uu\rangle + \psi_{ud}|ud\rangle + \psi_{du}|du\rangle + \psi_{dd}|dd\rangle$$

With the general form of a product state:

$$|\Phi\rangle = \alpha_u \beta_u |uu\rangle + \alpha_u \beta_d |ud\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_u |du\rangle + \alpha_d \beta_d |dd\rangle$$

Which yields the particular following equations systems for the singlet state:

$$\begin{cases} \psi_{ud} = \alpha_u \beta_d = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \psi_{du} = \alpha_d \beta_u = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \psi_{uu} = \alpha_u \beta_u = 0 \\ \psi_{dd} = \alpha_d \beta_d = 0 \end{cases}$$

But consider for example the third equation, which implies that at least either  $\alpha_u = 0$  or  $\beta_u = 0$ . In the former case, the first equation can't hold, while in the latter, the second equation can't hold. Hence the system is inconsistent, and cannot be solved.

This proves that the composite system's wave-function cannot be factorized.

So what does this mean regarding the states of the subsystems? Surely it conceptually makes sense to still talk about the existence of such states? Yes, obviously it does and that's precisely where the notion of density matrix becomes most useful<sup>62</sup>: to express *impure* states.

So, let's move on to density matrices then. Starting with the easiest: the composite system's: it's a pure state so we have (again, the vector/matrix representation depends implicitly on the usual ordered basis):

$$\rho = |\Psi\rangle \langle\Psi| = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -1/\sqrt{2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 & -1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1/2 & 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Let's verify the usual matrix properties for pure states:

$$\rho^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 & -1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1/2 & 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 & -1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1/2 & 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/4 + 1/4 & -1/4 - 1/4 & 0 \\ 0 & -1/4 - 1/4 & 1/4 + 1/4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \rho$$

And trivially,  $\text{Tr}(\rho^2) = \text{Tr}(\rho) = 1/2 + 1/2 = 1$ .

Moving on to the density matrices of the subsystems, that is, on the most accurate state description we can provide to each subsystems. In the book, we derived a formula<sup>63</sup>: we first introduced an arbitrary observable  $\mathbf{L}^A$ , acting on  $S_A$ , and upgraded it to the composite system:  $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{L}^A \otimes \mathbf{I}^B$ .

Let me rework the proof, while being a bit more explicit. First, component-wise, we have:

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{L}^A \otimes \mathbf{I}^B = \begin{pmatrix} L_{11} & L_{12} \\ L_{21} & L_{22} \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} L_{11} & 0 & L_{12} & 0 \\ 0 & L_{11} & 0 & L_{12} \\ L_{21} & 0 & L_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & L_{21} & 0 & L_{22} \end{pmatrix} \Leftrightarrow L_{a'b',ab} = L_{a'a}^A \delta_{b'b}$$

Now assume we're in a composite state:

$$|\Psi\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_{11} \\ \psi_{12} \\ \psi_{21} \\ \psi_{22} \end{pmatrix}; \text{ thus: } \langle\Psi| = (\psi_{11}^* \quad \psi_{12}^* \quad \psi_{21}^* \quad \psi_{22}^*)$$

<sup>62</sup>For pure states, the density matrix  $\rho$  is isomorphic to the state  $|\Psi\rangle$ :  $\rho = |\Psi\rangle \langle\Psi|$

<sup>63</sup>p204+, section 7.5 *Entanglement for two spins*

We can then compute the expectation value for  $\mathbf{L}$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \mathbf{L} | \Psi \rangle &= \sum_{a,b,a',b'} \psi_{a'b'}^* L_{a'b',ab} \psi_{ab} \\
&= \sum_{a',b,a} \psi_{a'b'}^* L_{a',a}^A \psi_{ab} &= \sum_{a',a} \left( \underbrace{\sum_b \psi_{a'b'}^* \psi_{ab}}_{\rho_{a'a}} \right) L_{a',a}^A \\
&= \sum_{a'} \left( \sum_a \rho_{a'a} L_{a',a}^A \right) &= \sum_{a'} \left( \sum_a \langle a | \rho^A | a' \rangle \langle a' | \mathbf{L}^A | a \rangle \right) \\
&= \sum_{a'} \left( \sum_a \langle a' | \mathbf{L}^A | a \rangle \langle a | \rho^A | a' \rangle \right) &= \sum_{a'} \left( \langle a' | \mathbf{L}^A \left( \underbrace{\sum_a |a\rangle \langle a|}_{=\mathbf{I}^A} \right) \rho^A | a' \rangle \right) \\
&= \sum_{a'} (\langle a' | \mathbf{L}^A \rho^A | a' \rangle) &=: \text{Tr}(\mathbf{L}^A \rho^A) = \text{Tr}(\rho^A \mathbf{L}^A)
\end{aligned}$$

Where the last equality is an usual property of the trace operator.

And we've already demonstrated in the book, using similar arguments, that

$$\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle = \langle \Psi | \mathbf{L} | \Psi \rangle = \text{Tr}(\underbrace{|\Psi\rangle \langle \Psi|}_{=: \rho} \mathbf{L}) = \text{Tr}(\rho \mathbf{L})$$

So what we've proved in the end is that:

$$\langle \mathbf{L} \rangle = \text{Tr}(\rho \mathbf{L}) = \text{Tr}(\rho^A \mathbf{L}^A) = \langle \mathbf{L}^A \rangle$$

That is, we've reduced the density matrix  $\rho$  on the composite system to a density matrix  $\rho^A$  on Alice's subsystem.

---

I'll come back to this density matrix  $\rho^A$  in a moment, but before moving on any further, let me emphasize a subtle point that I think could have been made clearer in the book. Suppose we're in a mixed state in Alice's subsystem. This means that there's some amount of chance we're in this state, or some amount we're in this other state, and so on, something like:

$$|\psi\rangle = P_1 |\psi_1\rangle + P_2 |\psi_2\rangle + \dots$$

But wait a minute, each of those  $|\psi_i\rangle$  is an element of the state space (the Hilbert space), so they can all be expressed as a linear combination of its basis vectors. In the context of a spin:

$$\begin{aligned}
|\psi\rangle &= P_1(\alpha_1 |u\rangle + \beta_1 |d\rangle) + P_2(\alpha_2 |u\rangle + \beta_2 |d\rangle) + \dots \\
&= \left( \sum_i P_i \alpha_i \right) |u\rangle + \left( \sum_i P_i \beta_i \right) |d\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

Assuming we renormalize that last state vector if need be, haven't we just found a wave-function describing Alice's state? But haven't we just stated that we cannot find a wave-function for Alice's state because it's a mixed state?

You could push this thinking one step further: can't we do the same thing for Bob's space, and join the two resulting states with a tensor product?

Well, there's one considerable issue with the previous reasoning, and I don't think it's clear from the book. So let me emphasize it:

Elements of the so called state-space **aren't** states!

Meaning,  $|\psi\rangle$  **isn't** a state! What we have is the following:

The set of all *pure states* is isomorphic to  $S_A = \{|\psi\rangle\}$ .

The most careful definition of quantum system states is<sup>64</sup>:

The states of a (quantum) system are all positive, trace-class, linear maps  $\rho : S_A \rightarrow S_A$  for which  $\text{Tr}\rho = 1$

The previous definition accounts for some refinements that will be introduced in the next chapter of Susskind's book. For example, a *trace-class* map refers to a map who has a finite trace: it's always the case in a finite dimension vector space, but divergence may occur in infinite dimension vector spaces, which are mandatory to express position observables for example.

To simplify, such maps corresponds to our density matrices, which as we've saw, can encode both pure and mixed states. We could argue on terminology regarding what a state is: a "mixed state" may only corresponds to the information we have about a state, and not to an actual, physical state, which would justify the less strict terminology, while introducing some confusion on the use of the term "state".

It just so happen than for every pure state, there's a 1 : 1 correspondance with the elements of the Hilbert "state" space, as  $\rho = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ .

So we can't just create a convex combination of "pure states" (well, something that's isomorphic to a pure state in our modern terminology). That's why when density matrices were introduced in Susskind's book, the convex combination was performed over projection operators built from pure states:

$$\rho = P_1 |\psi_1\rangle\langle\psi_1| + P_2 |\psi_2\rangle\langle\psi_2| + \dots$$

And not as I've just show you, directly over elements of the Hilbert space.

Now that we have a clear definition of what a state is, we can check that our matrix  $\rho^A$  really is a state: we want to prove that it's a positive, trace-class linear map such that  $\text{Tr}(\rho^A) = 1$ .

It's clearly **trace-class**, because we're in finite dimension: we have a matrix, the trace is a finite sum, it always converges.

Let me write the matrix in component form:

$$\rho^A = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_b \psi_{1b}^* \psi_{1b} & \sum_b \psi_{1b}^* \psi_{2b} \\ \sum_b \psi_{2b}^* \psi_{1b} & \sum_b \psi_{2b}^* \psi_{2b} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_{11}^* \psi_{11} + \psi_{12}^* \psi_{12} & \psi_{11}^* \psi_{21} + \psi_{12}^* \psi_{22} \\ \psi_{21}^* \psi_{11} + \psi_{22}^* \psi_{12} & \psi_{21}^* \psi_{21} + \psi_{22}^* \psi_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

Let's compute its trace:

$$\text{Tr}(\rho^A) = \psi_{11}^* \psi_{11} + \psi_{12}^* \psi_{12} + \psi_{21}^* \psi_{21} + \psi_{22}^* \psi_{22} = \langle\Psi|\Psi\rangle = \boxed{1} \text{ (as } |\Psi\rangle \text{ is normalized)}$$

Lastly, as every component of the matrix is a positive real number, I guess this is enough to prove that  $\rho^A$  is **positive**.

We're ready to move on to verify that  $(\rho^A)^2 \neq \rho^A$ . After a quick check, I don't think we reach anything conclusive by carrying the computation symbolically, so let's do it numerically:

$$(\rho^A)^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \times 0 + 1/\sqrt{2} \times 1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \times (-1/\sqrt{2}) + 1/\sqrt{2} \times 0 \\ (-1/\sqrt{2}) \times 0 + 0 \times (1/\sqrt{2}) & -1/\sqrt{2} \times 1/\sqrt{2} + 0 \times 0 \end{pmatrix}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1/2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 \end{pmatrix}^2 = \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{I}^A \neq \rho^A$$

Clearly,  $\text{Tr}((\rho^A)^2) = 2(1/4) = 1/2 < 1$ , as expected.

<sup>64</sup>See [https://youtu.be/GbqA9Xn\\_iM0?t=4453](https://youtu.be/GbqA9Xn_iM0?t=4453)

Finally, let's crunch some numbers, using our  $R$  script:

$$\langle \sigma_z \rangle = \langle \Psi | \sigma_z | \Psi \rangle = 0; \quad \langle \sigma_x \rangle = \langle \Psi | \sigma_x | \Psi \rangle = 0; \quad \langle \sigma_y \rangle = \langle \Psi | \sigma_y | \Psi \rangle = 0$$

$$\langle \tau_z \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_z | \Psi \rangle = 0; \quad \langle \tau_x \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_x | \Psi \rangle = 0; \quad \langle \tau_y \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_y | \Psi \rangle = 0$$

$$\langle \tau_z \sigma_z \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_z \sigma_z | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -1/\sqrt{2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1$$

$$\langle \tau_x \sigma_x \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_x \sigma_x | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -1/\sqrt{2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1$$

$$\langle \tau_y \sigma_y \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_y \sigma_y | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -1/\sqrt{2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1$$

$$\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle = \langle \Psi | \sigma_z \tau_z | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -1/\sqrt{2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1$$

The last one served to verify the following correlation:

$$\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle - \langle \sigma_z \rangle \langle \tau_z \rangle = -1$$

### "Near-singlet" state

Starting from the following composite state:

$$|\Psi\rangle = \sqrt{0.6}|ud\rangle - \sqrt{0.4}|du\rangle$$

We can easily identify the wave-function for the composite system:

$$\psi : \begin{cases} |uu\rangle & \rightarrow \psi_{11} = 0 \\ |ud\rangle & \rightarrow \psi_{12} = \sqrt{0.6} \\ |du\rangle & \rightarrow \psi_{21} = -\sqrt{0.4} \\ |dd\rangle & \rightarrow \psi_{22} = 0 \end{cases}$$

The density matrix for the composite system naturally follows for the definition of the state:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho &= |\Psi\rangle \langle \Psi| = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \sqrt{0.6} \\ -\sqrt{0.4} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{0.6} & -\sqrt{0.4} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.6 & -\sqrt{0.6 \times 0.4} & 0 \\ 0 & -\sqrt{0.6 \times 0.4} & 0.4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.6 & -\sqrt{0.24} & 0 \\ 0 & -\sqrt{0.24} & 0.4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Let's square it:

$$\rho^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.6 \times 0.6 + (-\sqrt{0.24})^2 & -0.6\sqrt{0.24} - 0.4\sqrt{0.24} & 0 \\ 0 & -0.6\sqrt{0.24} - 0.4\sqrt{0.24} & 0.4 \times 0.4 + (-\sqrt{0.24})^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.36 + 0.24 & -\sqrt{0.24} & 0 \\ 0 & -\sqrt{0.24} & 0.16 + 0.24 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \rho$$

Immediately,  $\text{Tr}(\rho^2) = \text{Tr}(\rho) = 1$ .

Again, this is an entangled state: by the same (abstract) reasoning as before, we can't find a wave-function for the subsystems, and we must look for a density matrix. I'll skip the details this time:

$$\rho^A = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_{11}^* \psi_{11} + \psi_{12}^* \psi_{12} & \psi_{11}^* \psi_{21} + \psi_{12}^* \psi_{22} \\ \psi_{21}^* \psi_{11} + \psi_{22}^* \psi_{12} & \psi_{21}^* \psi_{21} + \psi_{22}^* \psi_{22} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0.6 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.4 \end{pmatrix}$$

Let's square it:

$$(\rho^A)^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0.36 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.16 \end{pmatrix} \neq \rho^A$$

Clearly,  $\text{Tr}((\rho^A)^2) = 0.36 + 0.16 = 0.52 < 1$ .

Let's crunch some numbers again<sup>65</sup>; again, this has been automatically computed by the *R* script:

$$\langle \sigma_z \rangle = \langle \Psi | \sigma_z | \Psi \rangle = 0.2; \quad \langle \sigma_x \rangle = \langle \Psi | \sigma_x | \Psi \rangle = 0; \quad \langle \sigma_y \rangle = \langle \Psi | \sigma_y | \Psi \rangle = 0$$

$$\langle \tau_z \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_z | \Psi \rangle = -0.2; \quad \langle \tau_x \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_x | \Psi \rangle = 0; \quad \langle \tau_y \rangle = \langle \Psi | \tau_y | \Psi \rangle = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \tau_z \sigma_z \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \tau_z \sigma_z | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{0.6} & -\sqrt{0.4} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \sqrt{0.6} \\ -\sqrt{0.4} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1 \\ \langle \tau_x \sigma_x \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \tau_x \sigma_x | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{0.6} & -\sqrt{0.4} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \sqrt{0.6} \\ -\sqrt{0.4} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \simeq -0.9797959 \simeq -2\sqrt{0.24} \\ \langle \tau_y \sigma_y \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \tau_y \sigma_y | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{0.6} & -\sqrt{0.4} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \sqrt{0.6} \\ -\sqrt{0.4} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1 \\ \langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle &= \langle \Psi | \sigma_z \tau_z | \Psi \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{0.6} & -\sqrt{0.4} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \sqrt{0.6} \\ -\sqrt{0.4} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1 \end{aligned}$$

The last one served to verify the following correlation:

$$\langle \sigma_z \tau_z \rangle - \langle \sigma_z \rangle \langle \tau_z \rangle = -1 - 0.2 \times (-0.2) = -0.96$$

---

For completeness, here's the aforementioned, self-contained *R* script. You may want to look at the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ source file. I've wrote a separate article (.html) showcasing various R features used in this script.

```
#!/bin/Rscript
```

```
# Quirky, but does the job.
```

```
# Computes expectation values for a composite  
# system built from two quantum spins.
```

```
#
```

```
# Used with either with 1 or 5 arguments:
```

```
# <operator> [wave-function (uu, ud, du, dd)]
```

```
#
```

```
# Each argument is parsed and evaluated, so you can
```

---

<sup>65</sup>There are a few more than asked

```

# use "tau_x %*% sigma_x" as an operator for example.
#
# If only an operator is provided (1 arg), its 4x4 matrix form
# is displayed as LaTeX on stdout.
#
# Otherwise, evaluates the expectation value for the operator
# for a system in a state described by the wave-function.

tmp <- "/tmp/R/lib"
.libPaths(tmp)
dir.create(tmp, recursive = TRUE, mode = "0755")

loadpkg <- function(p) {
  if (!require(p, character.only = TRUE)) {
    install.packages(p, repos='http://cran.us.r-project.org', lib=tmp)
    library(p, character.only = TRUE)
  }
}

# 2x2 identity and Pauli matrices
id2 = matrix(c(1, 0, 0, 1), 2, 2)
pz = matrix(c(1, 0, 0, -1), 2, 2)
px = matrix(c(0, 1, 1, 0), 2, 2)
py = matrix(c(0, 1i, -1i, 0), 2, 2)

# Upgrade subsystem spin component operators to the composite system
sigma_z = kronecker(pz, id2)
tau_z = kronecker(id2, pz)

sigma_x = kronecker(px, id2)
tau_x = kronecker(id2, px)

sigma_y = kronecker(py, id2)
tau_y = kronecker(id2, py)

# Expectation value computation
avg <- function(L, psi) {
  return((Conj(t(psi)) %*% L %*% psi)[1])
}

# Evaluate CLI arguments (e.g. "interpret" "tau_z %*% sigma_z"
# as the corresponding observable)
#
# Note that we need a list (lapply), as some of the arguments will be
# vectors already.
args <- lapply(
  commandArgs(trailingOnly = TRUE),
  function(x) { return(eval(parse(text=x))) }
)

# LaTeX export
loadpkg("xtable")

# See https://tales.mbivert.com/on-exporting-r-complex-matrix-latex/
xtable <- function(x, ...) {
  if (class(x[[1]]) == "complex") {
    z <- sapply(x, function(y) {
      if (y == 0) return(as.character(0))

```



```

    if (Im(y) == 0) return(as.character(Re(y)))

    t <- ""
    if (Re(y) != 0) t <- as.character(Re(y))

    if (Im(y) == 1) {
      if (Re(y) == 0) t <- "i"
      else t <- paste(t, "+i")
    } else if (Im(y) == -1)
      t <- paste(t, "-i")
    else {
      if (Re(y) == 0) t <- paste(Im(y), "i")
      else if (Im(y) > 0) t <- paste(t, "+", Im(y), "i")
      else t <- paste(t, Im(y), "i")
    }
    return(t)
  })
  dim(z) <- dim(x)
  xtable::xtable(z, ...)
} else
  xtable::xtable(x, ...)
}

if (length(args) == 1) {
  x <- xtable(args[[1]], align=rep("", ncol(args[[1]])+1))

  # 1.00 -> 1, in our peculiar case
  digits(x) <- xdigits(x)
  print(x,
        floating = FALSE, tabular.environment = "pmatrix",
        hline.after=NULL, include.rownames=FALSE, include.colnames=FALSE
        )
  q()
} else if (length(args) != 5) stop("Incomplete wave-function")

x <- avg(args[[1]], unlist(args[2:5]))

# avoids some 0+0i; refinable
if (x == 0) {cat(0, "\n")} else {cat(x, "\n")}

```

## 8 Particles and Waves